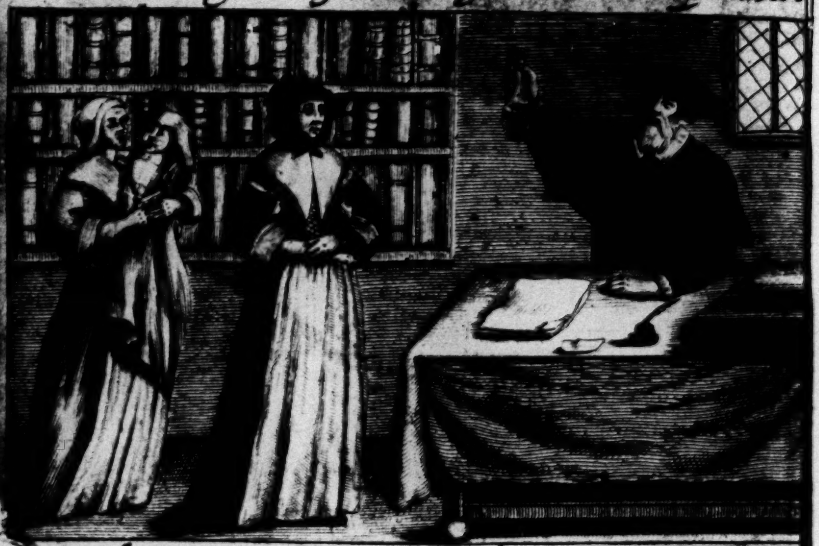
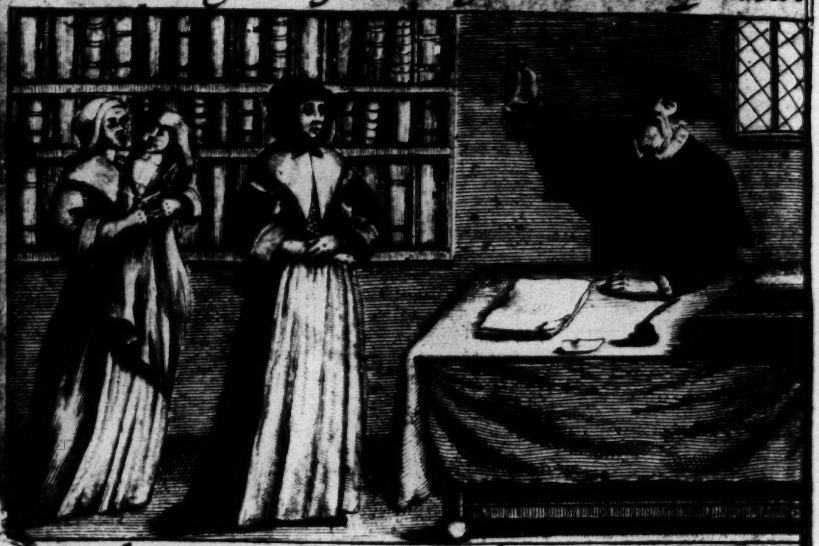
The Doctors' Dispensatory.
or the Art of Phisick restored to practise



The Apothecary's Shop opened.

Sold by N: Brooke at ye Angel in Cornhill.

The Doctors' Dispensatory.
or the Art of Phisick restored to practise



The Apothecary's Shop opened.

Sold by N: Brooke at ye Angel in Cornhill.

The Expert

DOCTORS Dispensatory

The whole Art of Physick Restored to Practice.

The Apothecaries Shop, and Chyrurgions Closet open'd; wherein all safe and honest practices are maintained, and dangerous mistakes discovered; and what out of subtilty for their own profits they have indeavoured to reserve to themselves, now at last impartially divulged and made common.

Together with a strict survey of the *Dispensatories* of the most renowned *Colledges* of the *World*, which being corrected, are here epitomized, and drawn into an easie and usefull method for Practice.

Containing,

First, the Latine Names of all Simples and Compounds English'd.

Secondly, The Vertues, Qualities, Properties, Quantities, and uses of all Simples and Componnds.

Thirdly, The way of prescribing remedies; together with the Forms and Rules for the making of all manner of medicines daily used by our English Physicians, Chyrurgians, and Apothecaries.

Fourthly, The Nature, Qualities, and Symptomes of all diseases.

Fifthly, Cautions for the applying all both internal and external medicines.

To which is added by *Jacob a Brunn*, publick Professor of Physick in *Basil*, a Compendium of the Body of Physick; wherein all the Medicaments Vniversal and Particular, Simple and Compound, are fitted to the practice of Physick; and these forms of remedies now before prescribed by the famous *P. Morellus*, chief Physitian to the King of *France*, and Chancellour of the Vniversity of *Monpellier*.

Dedicated to that excellent Anatomist *VESLINGIUS*.

London, Printed for *N. Brook* at the Angel in Cornhil near the Royal Exchange. 1657.

SION COLLEGE
LIBRARY.

SOLD BY ORDER OF THE
PRESIDENT AND GOVERNORS 1938.

Hodgson Sale Apr 2 1928
Item 146

NICHOLAS CULPEPPERS Approbation,

OR

Rather his Wiſh after his peruſal of that Famous, *Morellus* his Diſpenſatory.

WHereas I was put upon the deſigne of the *London Diſpenſatory*, which with good ſucceſs I tranſlated, and publiſhed, a Friend of mine, not long after, ſent me the more refined Work of *Morellus*, that moſt knowing Phyſitian to the King of *France*, whoſe method and plain directions for the making of all manner of Phyſick, ſet forth with the Annotations of *Jacob a Brun* Profeſſor of Phyſick in the Colledge of *Baſil*, I ſo honoured and admired, that had I been before acquainted with his Work, I had

made it my busineſſe to have tranſlated it, and preſented it to my Country-men, as the moſt uſefull, compleate and exact Diſpenſatory that in all my reading I ever met with.

Thine,

N. Culpepper.

The Epistle of JOHN WINAND Doctor of PHYSICK of the University of MONTPELIER.

To John Jacob a Brunn, sometimes his beloved Chamber-follow, in praise of that excellent piece of Morellus's Dispensatory.

IT was truly and judiciously spoken by Herophilus, (most excellent Doctor) that Remedies are the hand of God if rightly applyed; but if otherwise by an unskilful and empirical hand, nothing is more prejudicial. Now seeing that in all earthly enjoyments nothing is more desirable then health, without which the whole series or length of life is an

heavy and unsupportable burthen of miserie
depressing of the most heroick and noblest spi
rits; Therefore there is nothing more profita
ble and excellent then those things whic
do either preserve the present life, or resto
the same anew when brought almost to the la
act on the Theater of Mortality. Those Re
medies which do restore or renew nature, who
benefits if once discerned by the Patient, ho
can he chuse but to affirm, that in them h
hath found the immediate acting hand of
Deity? Hence is that most antient preroga
tive of Physitians, not onely acquired by ad
mission, and their function, but also rendre
illustrious, and noted by a regal benevolenc
and affection, by how much the greater pr
dence, experience, and happy and succesful ap
plications hath equalized them to the God o
Nature. This felicity or happy application o
Remedies being erected on the foundation o
Science, and receiving its rise from the same
is absolutely necessary for a judicious Phys
tian; wherefore having found out the enemie
to Nature, industriously and artificially di
gested and compounded Remedies, which lie
on derivative or transient efficacy and vertue
penetrate the most secret parts of the body, ex
pelling the enemies to Nature from their for
tresses, and strong holds, and strengthening
the inward parts against a second onset, by
repressing

repreſſing and excluding of their Wiles. Such a Phyſitian is Morellus (if I may ſo ſay without prejudice) or was at the leaſt, as no underſtanding man can ſafely deny, whom for to commend, is out of my ſphere; his genius, learning, indefatiable pen, and excellent accompliſhments now above the vein of my pen, as the ſtellified Heavens, and planetary Orbs are above the meteors, the ſtile, and fruit, and benefit of the ſame ſufficiently ſpeak of him: for a Tree doth not feed without Apples, though it do boaſt with ſpreading branches, and vainly delude with bloſſomes; ſhould I go about to expreſs the ſublimeneſs of the work, the weakneſs of my Genius would fail in expreſſing of the ſame; how ſhould I elevate, or exalt its perfection which is apparently manifeſtly to all? yet though the confeſſion of two or three, yea all may take place, and teſtifie an undubitable probation, removing all ſcruple, or contradicting that vanity or preſumption which may caſt ſcurrilous aſperſions by an approved teſtimony, I ſhall here make known to the Reader, that this Tract publiſhed and ſent into the world was compiled by the illuſtrious and famous man Peter Morellus, in the moſt famous and antient Univerſity of Montpelier, being firſt privately communicated to me, and by me divulged; neither ſhall I acknowledge any other Author but Morel-

lus,

lus, *it being the chief Dispensatory from whence others have borrowed, as* Renodeus *witnesses, and in one word all the Tumultuary Dispensatories, who have washt off tenement but from him; and the Reader, in having* Morellus, *hath* Homers *Works in one Nutshel, the quintessence of practical Physick, and Apothecaries Art, so that he may desist from buying others of the like nature. Now I shall evidence as much as in me lyeth why you should be moved to publication of the same, as I have discerned by your Letters to me; first for the good of the Æsculapian practitioners, and laborious Initiates in the Art of Physick, shewing the way, and assisting their endeavours by the light of your admirable method for the ascension of the Muses mount. Also to animate such who though they have taken their degrees, yet never as yet have conflicted with an adversary, or else being unskilful leaders, both in order, time, and place, fear him as wanting those armes, and Auxiliary helps which should elude and nonplus his stratagems and designs, of which sort of men when you perceived and understood many adorned with the Title triumphantly, and in a bravado, though inglorious, yet vainly to glory, great in name, but smal and bare in knowledg, borrowing formes of Remedies from learned men, or else confounding of the balsome with* Assa

Fætida,

Fætida, *Aloes with Sugar, Pils with Electuaries, and Potions with Decoctions, and so transcending the doses, or never arriving at the same, either by no examination of the Ingredients, or else to the prejudice and great danger of the party affected; you have therefore resolved to eject them from the Society of Physitians and skilful Apothecaries, and also to have a respect to the Publick good and welfare. Oh the worthy praise of a generous spirit! thus to mind the publick safety, and particular worth of such a master, in recollecting those favours received from him, and commemorising them with a large encomium of his insignal deserts. My last request Sir is, that you would eternize his memory both with tongue and Pen, from the gulfe and shipwrack of oblivion, in asserting him from the injury of a surreptious honour: for my own part, seeing this Treatise intituled by one to whom I did communicate the same, who touch't with an itch of fame, hath sought a diserving from the endeavours of another in setting forth this Book, and wholly changing of the method, you presently judged such an arrogancy worthy of suppression, and the whole work without fucation, or violation by a preposterous method, to be divulged and communicated to the world in the name of the right Author, who for his great paines and study employed in Physick his sin-*

gular

gular affection towards the Germane Nation his candideness, and lastly The great Emolument conferd by him on the Family of the Muses and all Man-kind, doth deserve an eternal honour and name, freed from the dust and inclosure of the Sepulchre, well knowing how unjust a thing it is for one to be elated with the paines of another man, and to deprive the right owner of his deserved praise, according to that admonition of the acute and noble Scaliger, Exercitation 160. Section 3. where he saith, I shall willingly leave, dimissively grant, and liberally bestow on every one the praise and reward of his labour, not like to some drones and ungrateful persons who are so impudent as to usurp the Titles which are deservedly bestowed and placed upon others, dissembling of the gratitude which they do owe, by their malitiousness abolishing the memory of the right Author, that they may ascribe the same to themselves; but these new Upstarts, new Judges of Causes shall have their Consciences for an accuser, and posterity for their Judges. If this had been throughly considered by this new seeker of Honour, the very shadow of such a man would have deterred him from ever claiming of the Book of Morellus for his own. At first I happily admired at the inconsiderateness of the man; may be he supposed that the fraud of an ignoble planet might obscure

cure and counterfeit the beames and light of the ſun, or elſe when the ſun is once ſet, that it ſhall never riſe again, or at laſt never diſſipate thoſe thick clouds and miſts which do labour to ecclipſe his rays and brightneſs; or laſtly, that none of the other ſtars would atteſt the derivation of the light; ſo let him go and aſſume the reward aſſigned him by Scalger. *Finally, in this you have evidenced that the Univerſity of* Montpelier, *as in former Ages, ſo alſo in this of ours hath by a naturall proxity and felicity been productive in learned men, (as Ophir is of Gold, India of* Gemmes, Pactolus *and* Tagus *of Gold ore,* Gallia Narbonenſis *of the graine* Kermes, *Roſemary, and other wholſome herbes; and therefore in other things giving place to none, he that ſhall undertake to number them all in one continued Series for the ſpace of ſix hundred years, and following, may with the like preſumption attempt the calculation of the ſtars. Certainly he can hardly collect theſe of the firſt magnitude, thoſe Men I mean who have glorioufly ſhone forth in this Olympus of* Apollo *for learning and writing; let the flower of this Academy ſuffice for an inſtance,* Bernard Gordonius, Arnoldus Villanovanus, Stephen Arnoldus, Gerard de ſolo, Anſelm de Janua, Guido de Cauliaco, Valeſcus de Taranta, John de Tornamira, Falco

co Schyron, Dionyſius Fontanius, Antonius Sapporta, William Rondolet, John Bocand, Andreas Laurentius, *and in my time the great* Francis Ranchinus *Chancellor of the Univerſity; he having adorned me with the Doctoral Laurel*, John Varrandeus, Jacob Pradillius, *and the reſt of the regious profeſſors, and illuſtrious Councellors, noble for their deſerts; Laſtly, famous* Morellus *which ſhall give a teſtimony of the reſt, which I have not mentioned, who either through the default of time, or envy of the deſtines, have ſuſtained a ſuppreſſion of their Names. So that it ſhall be a ſtep to Virtue and Eternity of fame to be admitted into this Temple of* Æſculapius, *to admire and adore theſe bright and ſhining lights, to be rendred illuſtrious by them, and exhauſt ful Springs of Science from them, and in the end immortall honour ſhall be the Crown of their endeavours, ſeeing that I have nought elſe to ſay of* Morellus, *he as I ſaid before, being above the Elegies of my Pen, his Works do ſufficiently teſtifie his praiſe, and you your ſelf underſtand wel enough. Go on in your laudible enterpriſe, and ſpin out the whole thred you have begun in opening of the* Morellion *fount, from whence you derive your Name, repleniſh the ſublime wits of the Studious, with the plentiful flowing waters of*

his

his braine. Fare-well, happily follow the foot-steps of those illustrious Physitians of Basil, Plater, Bauhine, Stupom, *so that you may live long to the good of the Common-wealth of* Æsculapius.

The

The

BOOK-SELLER

To all ingenious

PRACTITIONERS

IN

PHYSICK.

LEARNED READERS,

NExt to my happineſs of having this Author ſo carefully Tranſlated for the publick benefit, I thought it not the leaſt part of my Duty to dedicate his Labours to your ingenuous peruſals more eſpecially, as I know that it could not but be acceptable in reſpect of the Authors preheminence and eſteem amongſt the beſt Writers of his time; for theſe and ſome other more weighty conſiderations I could not entertain

taine a higher ambition then to pre-
ſent you with his Diſpenſatory, as
I knew you the moſt equal Judges in
theſe ſtudies, and as you have ever
been the continual and indefatigable
preſervers of my Country-men; I do
acknowledge it is grown too much
a cuſtome to have phyſical Authors
engliſht, more eſpecially as ſome
of them have been ſurreptitiouſly, ad-
venterouſly, and dangerouſly ſet forth,
whereas if civil approaches had been
made to you for your ſafe and more
learned approbations, *I* dare with con-
fidence affirm it, that the Nations
had been preſerved from ſo many to
be lamented Empericall deſtructions,
under which without your timely and
future preventions, they are ſtill like-
ly to groane. This Volumne with all
its accompliſhments onely waits and
attends on you as a ſervant and faithfull
teſtimonial of that *I* ſhall ever cordi-
ally wiſh, that the beſt endeavou-
rers for the publick good would ad-
reſſe themſelves to you honeſtly, and
modeſtly making known to the World,

 that

that it conduceth to their Reputations to be subservient to your censures, on such, and no other termes this volumn is presented to you by.

Prolegomena.

Prolegomena.

THe Compoſition of Medicines may be conſidered two ways; firſt, according to their external form; Secondly, according to their internal, which doth wholly belong to the method of Phyſick. This again may be conſidered two manner of ways; for either it doth ſhew on what baſis a compounded Medicine doth conſiſt, whether it be Convective, Preſervative, or decoctive, wholly to be taken from the nature of the Indication; or an Alterative Medicament; as for example, ſuch a one which is heating in the ſecond degree, conſiſting of divers ſimples, and thoſe hot in the firſt, ſecond, or third degree; or elſe cold in the ſame degrees, according to the indications, which do ſhew many or few muſt be uſed in a doſis, that the end may adæquately reſult. I ſhall not diſcourſe of this internal Medicine, conſidered according to its inter-

nal form, but rather of the former, which doth perspicuously teach after what manner. The Medicinal may be concinnated into divers and convenient forms, either as the desire of the sick, which is not always the same, or the affections, or Morbifical causes, or the various constitution of the part affected doth reuqire, according to that Philosopher in the last book of his Analytick. Learning every discipline proceedeth from a permitted cognition. Wherefore I shal premise those things which are necessary to be known; so that the *Prolegomena*, may be reduced to four heads; the first of Medicinal weights and Measures. The second of the Notes and abbreviations of Physitians; the third is a Tractate of the differences and distributions of forms; & the Fourth what things are to be observed in every form.

1.

Of the Weights and Measures used in Physick.

SEing that the whole manner of Composition doth depend on the proportion of simples, which are estimated by Weight, Measure, Number, and bulk. I shall therefore necessarily insist on them. First dry things are generally expended by weight; which having divers differences in the Monuments of the Antients, the more used are to be followed by our Physitians in their prescriptions. A grain is the basis and foundation of the weight (as the unite of numbers adequate in weight to a white Pepper corn. scruple, which according to the Antients should

cont.

contain 24 grains, yet according to an ill received uſe hath now but twenty.

Drachma, a dram hath three ſcruples.

Uncia, an ounce hath eight drams; where note by the way, that when three are preſcribed by the Name of a Meaſure, they are termed *quartarium*, or a quarter of a pound.

Libra, a pound hath twelve ounces.

Menſuræ, or Meaſures are for liquids, deſigned by veſſels and ounces; for the modern Phyſitians do not meaſure in certain hollow veſſels as the Antients were wont, but eſtimate the meaſures by weight, ſo that every meaſure may be anſwerable exactly to the weights: now ſeeing that the ſame weight of Liquids is not correſpondent to the weight of Arids.

The quantity of Medicines in magnitude is preſcribed by handfuls, *Faſciculi*, and Pugils.

Manipulus, is that quantity which may be held in the hand, anſwerable to half an ounce.

Faſciculus, as much as one can hold, or incloſe within the arm.

Pugillus, a Pugil is either greater or leſſe; the greater is as much as may be taken in all the five fingers; the leſſer Pugil as much as may be taken in three fingers; the greater in weight a whole dram, the leſſer half a dram.

In number alſo the quantity of Medicines is conſidered, and that either equally, or unequally as for example by three or four Lupines.

In ſpecies, the orders of Medicaments are conſidered;

Roots, Barks, and Wood are weighed.

Leaves are meaſured by Manipulus; but if preſcribed

cribed for baths by Fasciculs, for leaves observe hat in purging potions they are used to the third part of a Manipule.

The doses of seeds are for the most part expressed, yet Barley and Rise are measured by the Pugil.

Flowers are also defined by the Pugil.

Fruits are either greater or less; if less, as Corans and Raisins, are exhibited by weight or number; if greater, as Apples, Prunes, and Figgs, they are presented in number.

Aromaticks, Gums, and Rosins are difined by weight.

Efficatious, and pretious Liquors, and distilled oyls by drops.

2.

Of Physical abbrevations, and Notes.

PHysitians with less difficulty, and loss of time have certain letters by which either weights in the place of words are expressed in their forms, or else certain abbreviations do design the beginning or end of the form.

The

The Notes of Weights used by Physitians and Apothecaries.

Gr. gr.		A Grain.
℈ ß		Half a scruple.
℈ j		A scruple.
ʒ j		A dram.
ʒ ß		Half a dram.
℥ j		An ounce.
℥ ß		Half an ounce.
℔ j		A pound.
℔ ß		Half a pound.
M j	Noteth	*Manipule*, or handful.
M ß		Half a *Manipule*.
P		A pugil.
quart.		A quartary, or 3 ounc.
ana		*Ana.* i. e. an equal pound or measure of two or more Medicines.
an. part. æq.		The equal parts of every one of them.
q. s.		What suffiseth, or a sufficient quantity.

Under one general Title are sometimes comprehended Simplet.

The five greater opening Roots.

Parsley,
Fennel,
Asparagus,
Petroselinum,
and Ruscus.

The five leſſer opening Roots.
Guajacum,
Rubia,
Elecampany,
Capparis,
and Ononidis.

The five mollifying Herbs.
Mallows,
Althea,
Violet leaves,
Mercury,
Acanthus, or Brancha Urſina.
To the ſame add Wall-flowers, Bettony, and Atriplex.

The five Capillary Herbs.
Adianthum, or *Venus* hair.
Adianthum, Mirum album, or Ruta murar.
Polytrichon Aureum.
Trichomanes,
Aſplenium, or Ceterach.

The four great hot Seeds.
Aniſe-ſeeds,
Fennel-ſeeds,
Carraway-ſeeds,
Cummin-ſeeds.

The four leſſer hot Seeds.
Of Parſley,
Of Ammonium,
Of Daucus,
Of Ammeos.

The four greater cold Seeds.
Cowcumber-ſeeds,
Gord-ſeeds,

Ci-

Citrual ſeeds,
Melon ſeeds.

The four leſſer cold Seeds.
Endive-ſeeds,
Scariol-ſeeds,
Lettice-ſeeds,
Marjoram-ſeeds.

The four Cordial Flowers.
Bugloſs-flowers,
Borage flowers,
Roſe flowers,
Violet flowers.

The fragments of fine pretious Stones.
Of Saphires,
Of Granat,
Of Smaragd,
Of Hyacinth,
Of Sardus.

The four waters for the Pleureſie.
Carduus Mariæ,
Taraxacon
Carduus Benedictus,
Scabious.

The three Stomack Oyls.
Wormwood Oyl,
Cydonia, or Oyl of Oranges,
Oyl of Maſtick.

The four hot Unguents.
Aragon,
Martiatum,
Althea,
and Agrippa's Oyntment.

The four cold Oyntments.
Album Camphoratum,
Rosatum Mesuæ,
Populeon,
Infridans Galeni.

3.

Of the differences of forms and distributions of this Tractate.

IN way of a foundation, by the word form, I here understand a compounded Magisterial Medicine, which is such an one as is prescribed by the Physitian for the present occasion; to difference the same from the Apothecaries, of which I shal not here largely or purposely treat; but only by the way for the affinity of the Argument. This Tractate is divided into two Books, wherof the first is of internal medicines, the latter of external. The first book again hath three Sections; the first for the Forms and Compositions of Liquid Medicines; the second of Soft Medicines; and the third and last of Solid Medicines. The heads and forms of this Section.

CHAP. I.

1	Of an Apozeme	1
2	Of a Julip	24
3	Of a Potion	30
4	Of a Syrup	51
5	Of a Vomitory	72

6 Of Medicated Wines 81
7 Of an Emulsion
8 Of Ammygdalate
9 Of Hordeatum
10 Of Milk and Whey
11 Of Hydromel
12 Of Water and Sugar with Barley Water
13 Of the Diet
14 Of Dragon-broth
15 Of a Restorative Distillation
16 Of Broths and Potages

The Chapters and Forms of the second Section.

CHAP. I.

1 Of the Bolus 129
2 Of Opiates 134
3 Of Comfits and Conserves 143
4 Of Preserves 146

The Chapters and Forms of the third Section.

CHAP. I.

1 Of Pasta Regna 148
2 Of Pandaleon 150
4 Of Poineolate
4 Of Tablets
5 Of Pills
6 Of Powders

The Second Book hath two Sections, the first of common Remedies in divers parts, the second of proper Remedies.

CHAP. I.

1 Of an Epitheme 169
2 Of a Lotion 173
3 Of a Fotion 176
4 Of a Bath 181
5 Of a ſtove or Sudatory 183
6 Of Embrocation 185
7 Of the Liniment 188
8 Of Unguents 190
9 Of a Cerecloth 194
10 Of an Emplaſter 196
11 Of the Spanadrap 198
12 Of a Cataplaſm 200
13 Of Rubificating medicines
The Dropax, 203
14 Of Phyſical baggs
The Veſicatory. 205

The Chapters and Forms of the Second Section, the Remedies proper to certain parts.

CHAP. I.

1 Of Frontal
2 Of Oxyrrhodinum
3 Of Cucupha
4 Of a Gargariſm.

For the Noſe.

3 Of a liquid Unguent
6 Of a Phlegmatick Purgation

7 Of a Dentrifice or Medicine for the cleansing of the Teeth
8 Of an Errhinum or Medicine for the Nostrils
9 Of a Suffiment.
10 Of an Odoriferous Medicine.

For the Stomach.

A Scutum or Releeving Medicine.

For the Womb.

Pessarum or a Medicine for the Womb.

For the Arse-hole.

Of a Suppository.
Of a Glyster.
Of a Nascale.
Also divers injections.

What Heads are to be observed in the Composition of every Medicine. In the Composition of every Medicine three things must be observed. The Form or Composition, the Use, and the Profit. In the Composition on the Material part we shall observe in our prescriptions quantity, quality, and order; where generally note that quality must be noted in single; and those first most Appropriate and Efficacious, that in as much as possible may be, the party affected may be restored to health very suddenly.

Secondly, They must be Safe, that if they do not remedy, they may no wise prejudice the party, though in desperate Diseases, desperate Medicines may be used with an exquisite Judgement.

Thirdly,

Thirdly, They must be Pleasant and Jucund, in colour, smel, and tast, yet contrary and resistant to the disease, and in so doing, you may happily put a gloss on nature.

Fourthly, such Remedies as are experienced and approved; for these will more safely cure then those which are newly found out by a Physitian, though of the greatest judgement; for the quantity in a continuity they must all be moderate, not commending the use of an ounce when a dram is sufficient. More specifically, those Medicines which are bitter or nauseating, neither in taste or smell, not being easily retained or taken by the Patient, must therefore be compounded in a less dosis; for the discreete quantity or number of the ingredients, those compositions must not be used where their simples are sufficient. Also in the compositions of simples avoid much a vast and high bulk made like a theriacal Medicine; these kind of Medicines causing a loathing in the sick who taketh the same, and a trouble to the Apothecary, in compounding or forming of the Paste on that account, causing an omission, depriving the Physitian of his hope, and the sick of the operation of the Medicine, with the loss of his health. For the order of the prescription, though nought of the strength of the medicine do sink after what sort soever the Simples are prescribed, so they are rightly prepared, yet it is far better, and more elegantly to observe such an order in the prescription, as I have described in every form, so that in the general I have nothing more

worthy

worthy of animadversion in the use of the prescribed form; First consider the quantity, or dose, then the time, and lastly the use; hence the words adnected, in which the form is conceived. In the Utility I shall shortly and plainly demonstrate the universal fruit which doth emerge from the form of every medicine in the Genus and the Species.

These two Physical Phrases are fit to be known by all English Men; Printed for N. Brooke, at the Angel in Cornhill.

ADAM in EDEN, or the Paradise of Plants; a compleat History of Plants, Fruits, Herbs and Flowers. With their time of Flourishing and decreasing. Together with their Physical Vertues; a Work fit to be known by all English men, by W.C. M: D. and others.

THE DOCTOR'S DISPENSATORY:

OR THE APOTHECARY HIS SHOP OPENED.

SECTION I.

OF LIQUID MEDICINES.

CHAP. I.

Of Apozems and Decoctions.

THat which the Latines cal Decoction, the Greeks cal *Apozem*, properly derived from ἀπέψειν which signifies to heat or boyl.

But now an *Apozem* is onely that liquid form of a Medicine

which is made of a Liquor saturated with the vertues of divers ingredients, relished with Sugar or Honey clarified, and spiced, prepared in a sufficient quantity for four or five doses, either to purge or alter.

Apozems are two-fold: one of the antients, now out of use; another of modern Writers, of which I here write; and from the general effect of it, it is two-fold, altering and purging.

Altering Apozems, or Decoctions.

THat is called an altering *Apozem* or *Decoction* which hath a vertue to alter the body, and things contained in it, especially the Humours, without that visible evacuation which is usually called purging.

Such altering *Apozems* either alter the body in the qualities only, and these are properly called alterers in general, or else as they are made of divers simples relating to each particular part, they are termed cephalical, cordial, hepatical, &c. and these deserve to be accounted specifical alterers.

Or else (and that usually) they are given to make way for a succeeding purge, and free the body from obstructions, and these are called opening Apozems.

They alter humors either in the first or second qualities, and that either without intention of purging, and these are called simply altering Apozems, as heating, &c. or else also in the second qualities, and with intention of future purging and these are generally called preparers; or else as they have relation to particular humors, the

are ſpecially termed preparers ophlegme, Choler, &c.

To theſe Apozems are to be referred divers decoctions, which are uſed to provoke the courſes, Urine, & ſweat, as thoſe water-waſting Medicines hereafter to be mentioned.

But enough of them; in an altering Apozem theſe three things (as moſt relating to a method of Phyſick) are to be chiefly conſidered, *viz.* 1. Compoſition. 2. Uſe or manner of preſcribing. 3. Benefit gained by them.

In Compoſition ſix things are diligently to be conſidered.

1. The matter out of which the vertues are to be drawn.

2. The *Liquor* into which it is to be conveyed, and the ingredients to be putthereinto.

3. The decoction, both in boyling and after.

4. What things are to be diſſolved in it.

5. The clarifying of it.

6. The aromatizing or ſeaſoning it with ſpices, &c. to make it grateful.

In the *Matter* theſe three things are to be regarded: 1. The Quality. 2. The Quantity. 3. The reaſon and order in the preſcription.

Concerning the quality: the matter of ingredients, preſcribed in Apozems or other decoctions, are chiefly roots, barks, woods, leaves, ſeeds, fruits, flowers, ſpices.

The quantity or Doſe in which the aforeſaid things are preſcribed are thus to be moderated.

Roots are not to exceed 4 ounces, or ſix at the moſt.

Barks (if they go into the composition) one ounce, or 2 ounces at most.

Woods in the same quantity.

Leaves are to be not above 8 large handfuls, or 10 at most.

Seeds to one ounce, or an ounce and half, seldom to 2 ounces.

Fruits are either the lesser sort, as Raisins &c. which are prescribed two several wayes, either in weight, as from one ounce to two ounces, or else in number, and that usually by pairs, as to 4. 6. 10. 20 pair.

Or the greater, & then they are prescribed only in number, either even or odd, if they be of the greatest sort, (as Apples sliced, &c.) then 1, 2, 3, &c. but if they are less, as Figgs, &c. they are prescribed by pairs, a ℔ *ficuum ping. paria* 10, &c.

Flowers, from *Pugil.* 4 to 6.

Spices are better added in the seasoning then in the boyling; yet if it seem requisite, in purging Apozems you may prescribe them from two drams to half an ounce at most.

Concerning the order of the prescription: as they are to be prepared by the Apothecary, so ought they to be prescribed by the Physitian, *viz:* first roots, (then barks and woods, if any be added.) 2 Leaves. 3 Seeds. 4 Fruits. 5. Flowers, and with them the spices last of all.

The *Liquor* in which these are to be boyled is to be considered, either in quality or quantity.

In relation to the quality, it is varied according to the intention of the physitian; but generally fountain, or the best wel water is prescribed to the decoction of most Apozems. Yet oftentimes when

when the intention is to cool and cleanse (as in cholerick affections) they prescribe barly water; but if to attenuate, cut, and cleanse, and heat, as in phlegmatick affections, then the smaller sort of Mead; in Melancholick distempers Whey, and sometimes in obstructions of the Intrals chalibeated water: and sometimes the decoctions are prescribed by Physitians to be made in Wine and Water, of each like quantities; but it is better to add wine only in the latter end.

The *Quantity* of the Liquor is seldom prescribed by the Physitian, onely by q. s. or as much as is sufficient: yet it vvere to be lookt to, that by adding too much Liquor the things might not be over-boyled, to reduce it to a reasonable proportion, or by taking too little, the vertues not sufficiently extracted *&c.*

Decoction: The ingredients being recited, and ordered how to be managed, are prescribed to be made into a decoction by a *fiat Decoct:* &c. to wit, in the Liquor afore mentioned, which is commonly singly set down without determining to what quantity the Liquor ought to be wasted; yet usually it is prescibed to vvhat quantity it should be consum'd, as *fiat decoct. &c.* to one pint, or one pint and a half, *&c.* either way is allowable, so that the Decoction being finished it be prescribed to take of the decoction strained, a pint, or a pint and a half, *&c.* for Apozems are usually intended for four Doses; and if you take one pint and a half, there wil be for every Dose about 4 ounces and a half more or less; but if you intend it for five Doses, prescribe 20 ounces and no more, for else it is apt to corrupt or mould before it be spent.

Things to be dissolved in these Decoctions are either to help them to keep the longer, or to give them the better relish, or to add strength and efficacy to them; and in all these we must consider both quality and quantity.

In respect of their quality, either it is 1. some syrup only, and that such as is proper both for the disease and part affected, and this should always be added, both because it helps to sweeten the decoction, and imparts its own virtues to it; by which means are also helped the defects of the Apozem it self; and other faults which may arise, either by the carelessness, covetousness, or malice of the Apothecary, are much prevented.

2. Sugar alone in some affections, and humors as wel hot as cold.

3. Syrup and *Sugar* together.

4*ly*. Or Honey, which is profitable in all cold affections of the Head and breast, and in the winter; and this is used either simply, or *Medicated*: *i: e:* altered by the infusion of some simples or other, as honey of Roses, honey of Rosemary flowers, *&c.* in affections of the head proceeding from abundance of slimy flegm.

5*ly*. Besides these sweetners, one or two of which are alwayes to be mixt with every apozem, there are oftentimes very commodiously (to make it the more effectual) mixed with them;

Either the juyces of divers herbs, according to the several intentions of the Physician: as the juyces of Fumitory and Hops, in Melancholy; of Borage and Bugloss, if choler be mixed with it; as also the juyces of Sorrel or Mercury in divers affections of the Womb, and suppression of the Termes *&c.*

Or

Or the juyces of fruits, and those for the most part acid, as the juyce of Limons, in cholerick; the juyce of Pippins, in Melancholick; and of Pomegranats, in cholerick distempers where Urine is also to be provoked;

Or juyces in more vulgar use, as 1 Vinegar in hot and cholerick affections, which powerfully extinguisheth heat, or else to open obstructions, though cold ones; and also to cut and make thin gross humors; yet because it is hurtful to the Womb, in Women you must abstain from the use of it. 2. Wine in cold affections and tempers, in gross and clammy humors, obstructions, or when you would have the vertue of the Medicine penetrate far into the body. 3. *Aqua vitæ, &c.* to the same intention that Wine is added.

Note that when juyces or other Liquors are to be dissolved in your Apozems, then sugar alone is usually chosen to sweeten it, very seldom syrups.

The quantity of things to be dissolved differs according to the nature of them. Sweetners are usually dissolved from 4 ounces to six ounces at most; so that every dose of the Apozem may have between an ounce, and an ounce and half in every *Dose*, which is the common quantity for doses.

But where syrup and sugar are mixed together, the quantity of the syrup is for the most part about three ounces, and the sugar prescribed only with a *q.s.* is left to the palate of the Patient to determine.

Juyces and other strong Liquors, as Vinegar, *Aqua vitæ, &c.* are prescribed from one ounce to two ounces at the most; these also may first

be dissolved with the quantity of your sweetners.

Clarifying, and Aromatizing.

THese are usually prescribed thus, *Fiat Apozema clarificatum & aromatizatum pro quatuor dosibus*, *i. e.* let your apozem be clarified, aromatized, and prepared for four doses.

Of clarification see hereafter.

IN the Aromatizing or spicing two things are to be considered, the quality and quantity of your spices.

In relation to the quantity, either it is done with some simple spice, as in a cooling Apozem with yellow, or red Saunders; in a heating Apozem, usually with Cinnamom. (you may also add Ginger and Saffron, in Melancholy affections, or where the Termes are to be provoked) but in cold affections of the breast, powder of the root of Ireos Florentine is much used. Or else with some compound powder of the shops; as in hot distempers, with the spices of *Diatrion Santalon*; and in cold diseases the spices of *Aromaticum Rosatum*, *&c.*

The quantity of spices for aromatizing your Apozem, is, if it be a simple spice, from one dram to two drams; but if it be with the compound spices, from one dram to a dram and a half will suffice.

The use or form of prescribing is this.

℞. *i: e:* Take *&c.* (*viz:* the matter or ingredients) make a decoction in s. q. of the Liquor before-mentioned, take .of the decoction strained, *&c.* make an Apozem clarified and aromatized with, *&c.* for four doses in several mornings, or for evenings two hours before meat.

The utility or benefit of this form of Medicine is evident; for being liquid the humors that are to be altered (or purged, as hereafter) or other affections deep y rooted in the body are by this form easier penetrated unto, and by the virtue of the Medicine, and fluidness of its form dissolved, and made more obedient; besides the drought of the body is tempered, Melancholy obstructions the easier melted and dissolved, and the body made fitter to receive the vertue of succeeding Medicines.

But more especially an altering Apozem serves chiefly for

1. *Preparation*, to render the succeeding purging easie and successful, which consists in two things, the preparation of the humors, and the body; for they are prescribed for the concoction of the humors, or preparation of them in the first and second qualities, by heating cold humors, attenuating and cutting gross humors, by cleansing the clammy and viscid, tempering the fervent, incrassating those which are too thin, that by the Cooperation of the purge attracting, and nature expelling, they may be the easier exterminated; as to the preparation of the body, by opening obstructions, and making the body it self permeable, and

and passable, that the humor may have an easie course, it renders the following purge prosperous, to the commodity and ease of the sick party.

2*ly*. For *alteration* either of the humors or body, without regard to any purge, when the parts are to be reduced to their former temper divers wayes, but chiefly by heating and cooling; and the humors also, especially hot & boyling Choler; or the other humors also by other reasons with these instead of Juleps may be fitly altered.

3*ly*. In *opening Obstructions*, if they proceed from gross aduſt humors; else if they rise from cold humours, let your Apozem be purging.

4*ly*: *For moving Urines*, cleansing the Reins, and clearing them from gravel.

5*ly*. *For provoking the Termes* although two purgers conducing to the same purpose are usually mixed with them.

Here is to be noted, that of late amongst modern practisers, tis usual to make all Apozems both purging and altering at once, as shal be said, and in the place of altering Apozems, Juleps, or broths are for the most part used; but simply altering Apozems in continual Fevers, hot distempers of the parts and humors; and also in moving of Urine, in extinguishing the fervency of the Reins, and other parts, and consuming the relicks of the Morbifical causes, which in the declination of Fevers is most usually done by Urines.

But *Apozemes* are for the most part prescribed in the Spring and Fal; as also in the summer, because at these times Herbs flourish, and are ready at hand: they may also be prepared in winter of the parts of Herbs dryed, with greater efficacy if they may be had; else we must use syrups and Juleps, which are instead of *Apozems*, though not not so efficacious.

A purging Apozem.

A Purging Apozem which is now most in use and not unknown of old to *Mesues*, is so called because at once it both prepares the humours, and empties those which are already concocted, and this at divers times, (*viz*: 4 or 5) sensibly, by that operation which is called *Epicrasis*, by the virtue of those Medicines which are properly called purgers, and is most agreeable in long diseases, arising from copious and stubborn humors.

And this Apozem according to the several nature of the humour it is appropriated to, is either *Phlegmagogum*, *Melanagogum*, *Cholagogum*, or *Hydragogum*.

In this sort of Apozems three things are to be considered, the *Composition*, the *Use*, and the *Profit*.

In the *Composition* two things are to be regarded. 1. The ingredients by which it is made purgative. 2. Those things that are to be dissolved in it.

The matter or ingredients by which it is made purging, are simple purgers with their correctives, according to the variety of the humour they are intended for, either boyled together with the matter of the decoction, or boyled in the decoction, or else only infused in it.

In

In these three things are to be regarded the quality, quantity, and order of prescription either for boyling or mixing.

In relation to the *Quality* note that those purging simples which are only boyled are these, *Senna, Polypody, Carthamus, Turbith, Hermodactils, Agarick, Epithymum, Hellebor, Spurge, and the seeds of dwarf Elder.*

But those which use only to be infused, or very little boyled, are RHEUBARB, *Myrobolans, Tamarinds, and sometimes Casia.*

Concerning their *quantity*, they ought to be prescribed in such a proportion that it may serve for four or five doses, but in *general* because the purging vertue by boyling either may vanish, or not be sufficiently extracted, every purging simple ought to be prescribed in much greater quantity then otherwise, *viz:* double to the quantity they are given in substance, if they are the stronger sort; or treble, or quadruple, if they are of the middle sort of purgers; or a six-fold proportion in the gentlest sort: yet are they so to be prescribed that to two parts of the gentlest sort of purgers you must add but one part of the strongest, and almost in every purging Apozem let these three be prescribed as the basis of the decoction in a plentiful proportion, *viz: Senna, Polipody,* and *Carthamus:* let others be added according to the diversity of the humor; but in a lesser proportion, from one ounce to an ounce and half at most, in the interim having regard to the nature of the humor, as also its distemper, either in first or second qualities; and lastly, its quantity, in like manner, to the temper and constitution of the body, the custom of purging, natural inclination, condition of the

the country, time of the year, weather, sex and age, and al other things limiting a Legitimate purging, and to those things that may make easie or difficult the succeeding purgation: and accordingly the stronger or weaker purgers are to be given in the greater or less quantity.

More specially therefore these three are to be chosen for the fundamentals of almost every purging Apozem, (for they are convenient in Apozems that purge, Phlegm, and Melancholy, and waterish humors, and that purge Choler also, where *Senna* is chiefly necessary) which things are wont to be prescribed thus at *Mompelier*.

Take the leaves of Oriental Senna,
The pith of the seed of Carthamus,
Polypody of the Oak new gathered, ana: two ounces, two ounces and a half, three ounces for the ground of the decoction; yet so that sometimes you may prescribe a bigger quantity of one, sometime of the other, according as your intention is to purge this or that humor most.

But if Flegme be to be evacuated, to the aforesaid basis or foundation you may add of Gummy choice *Turbith* half an ounce, or six drams.

Hermodactils half an ounce, or 6 drams.

Agarick newly made into Troches tyed up in a lawn rag, half an ounce, or six drams; (and sometimes) Rheubarb tyed also in a ragg half an ounce, or six drams; or else it may be infused by it self, and afterward the infusion added.

Yet

Yet you need not add Turbithor Hermodactils, unleſs you have a purpoſe to purge very ſtrongly, or draw humors from the remoteſt parts; otherwiſe the two laſt may ſuffice.

But if Melancholy be to be emptied (if you wil leave out *Carthamus* from the aforeſaid baſis, augmenting the quantity of the others) let theſe be added.

Epithymum of Creet ſix drams, or 1 ounce.

The roots or ſhavings of black Hellebor 2 drams, or half an ounce, (but this ſeldom, and onely in ſtubborn Melancholy.)

But Agarick and Rheubarb are oftner mixed with things that purge Melancholy, perhaps becauſe theſe durable obſtructions are fomented by clammy muſcilaginous humors.

If choler be to be gently purged, you ſhal add to Senna (preſcribed alone for your baſis, to cleanſe aduſt excrements.)

Tamarinds an ounce an half, or two ounces.

Choice Rheubarb, &c. as before, half an ounce, or 6 drams.

The bark of citrine myprobalanes (rubbed with oyl of ſweet Almonds) half an ounce.

Yet 'tis better onely to infuſe the Myrobalans, leſt they ſhould impart to the Apozem a greater aſtriction then you intend.

But if watriſh and ſerous humors are to be drawn away, to the aforeſaid baſis you ſhal joyn.

The roots of Ireos common one ounce.

The middle bark of Elder or Danewort two drams, or 3 drams.

The leaves of Soldanella. M. j.

Hermo-

Hermodactils half an ounce.

The roots of Mechoacan infused by it self half an ounce.

Spurg (where you would purge strongly) prepared with Vinegar one dram.

The purgers of Phlegm also before spoken of may be added.

To these purgers you must joyn their correctors as before; but the dose of them is from two drams to half an ounce.

As to the order of prescribing & boyling, purgers in the prescription of an Apozem are placed after the fruits, before the flowers, and the spices or the correctors immediatly after the purgers; nevertheless *Polypody*, because it is alwayes boyled in the beginning, may also be prescribed at first among the roots.

Things to be dissolved in the strained decoction are either dissolved as sweetners only, as those before numbred in the *Altering Apozem*, and in the same quantity there mentioned, *viz*: when the decoction of the Apozem of it self is sufficiently purgative: but if on the contrary it be but gently purging, other catharticks are to be dissolved in the decoction strained; in which also are to be considered their *quality*, and *quantity*.

Concerning their quality they are either purging syrups, and that alwayes if you dissolve no sweetners in it, as syrup of Roses solutive, for cholerick and serous humors; as also (according to the received practice) in al others; syrup of Succory compound, in cholerick humors; syrup of Fumitory, in the aforesaid, and Melancholy.

Or

On the juyce of Damask Roses newly expressed, or the compleat infusion of them, (which is most usual in the spring, in those cautionary purgations of the cholerick, and them which abound with serous humours) but then you must also prescribe sugar as much as is sufficient.

And these are prescribed to be presently dissolved in the strained liquor.

Or else are they *Electuaries* of the shops, either in the form of opiates, as usually in the phlegmatick, *Diaphœnicum*, which is also profitable in the cholerick and bastard Tertians: in merely cholerick, *Diaprunum* simple, and solutive; *Electuary de Psillio*, when to be had, and sometimes Manna. These are prescribed to be dissolved only in the last Dose, and that in the time of present use, if the Apozem be not sufficiently purging of it self, otherwise abstain from them.

Concerning their quantity, Syrups may be dissolved to four ounces, or 6 ounces, the juyce or infusion of Roses to four ounces, opiats and tabulets to two drams, or 3 drams, according as either they or the Apozem are more forcible.

The use and form of prescription is the same with that of the altering Apozems; in this onely it differs, because it is said, Take, &c. Let it be made an Apozem clarified, (or if we desire it the stronger, not clarified) and aromatized, &c. for four doses in the mornings, in the last of which dissolve *some Electuary*, (when your intention is to eradicate, or when your Apozem hath not sufficiently purged) and so make it into a potion.

It

It differs also, if before the use of your Apozem a moderate purge should be given, then is said in the prescription for four morning doses, in the first and last of which dissolve *such an Electuary, &c.* and make a potion.

Touching the *Commodity*, Apozems of late are at once purgers and alterers, for so by little they prepare and concoct the humors, which because they cannot at once be wholly eradicated, are thus by parcels, *per epicrasin*, drawn forth without violence; A happy remedy in lasting Chronical diseases which are fomented by an abundance of Phlegmatick and Melancholy humors: these being the fountain of rebellious and contumacious affections are by this art rooted out; in hot diseases proceeding from fervent humors they are less needful; and if at any time they seem necessary, they are to be composed of the gentler sort of purgers of choler, if it be much; for a smal quantity of matter needs not a divided evacuation, but being simply altered may easily be rooted out with one evacuation; they are also esteemed most convenient in the declination of diseases, to draw away the Reliques, and in preservation to prevent diseases.

But it is now generally received, that before the use of this sort of Apozems, some Minorative Medicine may be first prescribed, to diminish the humors, either in the form of a potion, bole or pils, and afterwards by leisurely purging in this manner to prepare them to be wholly eradicated.

ANNOTATIONS.

CConcerning the MATTER *this is chiefly to be observed, that many do condemn the making your decoctions of such variety of things of divers parts: but because it is received in the practice of very famous Physitians (though it may seem to some to augment the pomp of the Receipt, that such large Decoctions or Apozems should be prescribed of Roots, Leaves, Seeds, Fruits, Flowers heaped together;) it may very well be allow'd. This one thing is to be condemned, that when four or five sorts of leaves, &c. will suffice for the variety of indications, they should not be multiplied needlesly; Or for example, if the latitude of the dose of seeds in the Apozem of eight or twelve several kinds be of each one dram, if half an ounce of two or three sorts will serve, why should they be augmented; this were to make a Decoction as copious as Treacle, to beget tediousness in the Apothecary that prepares it, or to give him cause to omit some things, thereby to frustrate the Physitian of his hope, and the Patient of the benefit, to the great indamagement of his health.*

2 *Concerning the Quantity or Dose of the ingredients of an altering Apozem nothing can be certainly verified, that may be imitated profitably: the usual law prescribed and confirmed by practice at Mont-Pellier, and by the benefit of the sick persons, is that the doses seem not too large, whereby the Patient might loathe it; on the contrary, a sparing hand will hardly be able to give the virtues of the Medicine sufficiently effectual to resist the diseases; if therefore you would have the Apozem fraught with the virtues of the simples, becau-*

a sufficient quantity of essence cannot be had unless you prescribe a greater quantity, it ought to be prescribed, for what vertue can you hope for out of half a pound of the matter of your Apozem for four doses; when besides by the fault of a less industrious Apothecary, or his carelesness, or the shortness of his boyling, or by his over-haste (the bonds in which it is restrained not being sufficiently loosed) the virtues are not dissolved and extracted as they ought to be: or else by over-boyling through the vehemency of the heat and fire. And lastly, by imprudently uncovering the vessel wherein it is boyled, their vertue may evaporate and vanish: the first defect, and this last less, you may prevent by preparing your decoctions, plentifully impregnated with the virtues of the simples, not too watrish, or such as may frustrate both Physitian and Patient of their wished expectation.

Therefore in general, let them be prescribed in the aforesaid quantity, seldom in a greater; in something a less, if the simples are dryed, because most effectual; also if either by nature, or the swinge of their virtues, they be of an acute quality, or a bitter or biting taste; or if ungrateful, or if you desire the decoction smal in quantity, or gentle in operation, and so for the contrary.

But in special concerning roots, you must mark that these roots which are usually called openers, though they are by modern Practisers often mixed with others that provoke sweat (and that happily, for by attenuating the humours they are the easier turned into vapours and sweat) yet ought it to be done in a smaller quantity, as to two ounces or three ounces at most; otherwise they wil turn the attenuated humors to the passages of the Urine which diminisheth sweat; to which intention the Arabians and modern Writers mingle them with the decoction of Lentils against the Smal Pox: them

roots also that are very bitter should be added only to the quantity of six drams, or one ounce, as Gentian, Bryony, Elecampane, &c. if they be dryed, half an ounce, or six drams wil be sufficient.

So also bitter herbs are to be in a little quantity, unless you desire the decoction very effectual, which were to be wished, to which purpose you see the bitterest of all joyned where cold obstructions are, as Centaury the less, Wormwood, to M 2, 3, or 4.

But fruits are either prescribed onely to alter; as to cool, sharp Prunes, Apples; to heat, Raisins and figgs, to ten or twelve pair; but when the belly is to be mollified, cleansed, or purged, Raisins, Figgs, sweet Prunes, and Dates may be prescribed to twenty pair, more or less: but in affections of the brest and Lungs hot or cold, they are prescribed in a larger proportion; as Raisins, Iujubes, Sebestens, sweet Prunes, &c. viz: to 30, 40, or 50 pair; yet beware the decoction be not made too thick and clammy, that it can hardly be strained; to which purpose when Figgs are joyned, let them be only to 4 or 8 pair prescribed.

Here is to be noted that though seeds are prescribed by weight, yet barlie and red vetches, or cicers, as flowers, are usually prescribed by P: j: or M: ß: so also is Epithymum sometimes with them prescribed to P: j: yet it is also very often prescribed by weight, as one ounce.

Concerning Fruit; if they be the lesser sort, as Corans, or if some parts of them are to be excluded, (as Dates prescribed cleared from their strings,) then are they never set down by number, or pairs, but by weight, but the greater, if whole by number; T marinds onely by weight, Raisins either whole or cleansed both by weight and number.

3. *As to the* QUANTITY *of purgers in a purging Apozem, that they may be ſet down ſecurely, we muſt note that the purging qualitie cannot be plentiful in decoctions prepared the uſual way unleſs the ſimples are preſcribed in a larger quantity, either they may periſh in boyling, or not be ſufficiently extracted for reaſons before rehearſed; to which add this, that Cathartick ſ are boyled in the liquor of the Apozem, after it is wel thickned and impregnated with the juice and virtues of other ſimples, by which means their force cannot ſo wel be diſſolved and mixed with the liquor, becauſe being firſt imbibed with the ſubſtance of the alterers, and by that made thick it cannot ſo wel inſinuat it ſelf into the parts of the matter laſt added, to diſſolve and extract the purging qualitie, for this is to be performed by a tenuitie of parts; therefore are they to be preſcribed in a greater doſe neer this proportion; thoſe things which in ſubſtance are given in the ſmalleſt quantity ſhould be added (in the decoction) in a double proportion to that they are given in ſubſtance (for reaſons aforeſaid) as thoſe which are vehement, as* Turbith, Hermodactils, Hellebor, *&c. if they be moderate, as* Agarick, *&c. let their proportion be trebled: if the weaker ſort (as* Senna, Polypody, Carthamus, Epithymum, Tamarinds, &c.*) a four-fold quantitie may be allowed by the conſent of Authors, and truth of practice; from this foundation, becauſe every Apozem is likely preſcribed for four doſes, the purgers muſt be taken in ſuch a quantity as may ſuffice for theſe four, that is, four ſeveral doſes of them are to be put into the decoction, as alwaies theſe three,* Senna, Polypody *and* Carthamus, *after the uſual manner, which you muſt appoint for the baſis: as for example, to purge Phlegme four times together, to one ounce, or one ounce and a half of* Senna, *and as much* Polypody; *and al-*

though you have prescribed also as much Carthamus, yet shal you add a fourth, as Agarick to half an ounce, or six drams, and you wil have your aime: but if besides Agarick you desire other phlegmagogues, as Turbith, or Hermodactils, then either the dose of this or the others is to be diminished, or at least a less proportion of these stronger is to be prescribed; and this is a general rule safe every where; yet you may prescribe a less quantity in respect of the sex, age, and time of the Year, &c. The Montpelier Physitians out of custom do usually prescribe a greater quantity, as was before noted in the Composition; so that against the common rules of others they take of the gentlest purgers to a six-fold or eight-fold proportion of the more vehement, as (Turbith) to a four-fold quantity; but although the Montpeliers do this (other circumstances being seen to) securely, yet is it not to be followed in all places, nor the dose so indifferently to be prescribed, but rather relie on the common practice before mentioned; or else search out the several doses of the simples in the substance, by comparing of which you wil readily find out the several doses for the decoctions: this only is to be noted, that though Tamarinds by this rule of proportion might be boiled to eight ounces, which is the four-fold proportion, because they are given in substance to two ounces, yet we seldom in the decoction transcend the dose in which they are given in substance, because being viscid they make the decoction clammy and grosse, hard to be clarified. Myrobolans also though they scarce purge, yet are they never to be prescribed in the greater, but alwaies in the less dose, at most to half an ounce, or 6 drams, because they make the decoction too much astringent contrary to the intention of the Physitian: therefore also are they to be only lightly boiled.

Apezom purely purging, but rather to be infused

as by the counsel of Mesues is rightly admonished against the vulgar practice.

4. But the ingredients of either Apozem are not to be prescribed promiscuously in any order, but in a certain manner according to the nature of the things that are to be boiled, & according to that order which the Apothecary observes in preparing decoctions, by the rules of art, as first roots, 2ly. Leaves, &c. and so they add the rest severally to be boiled, as is above set down: yet although this be so, the root of Liquorice, because (for its tenuitie of substance) it is boiled in the rank with the flowers, it may also be prescribed with them; so if sweet Woods, or Aromatical barks, as Cinamom be set down with the number of Roots, yet because they ought to be boyled last, for their spirits which are easily vanishing, therefore ought they to be prescribed last, either with or immediatly before the flowers.

Seeds should be added after the Leaves, yet the four greater cold Seeds, especially of Melons and Gourds, are prescribed just before the leaves; so your red spicers are to be prescribed either with, or just before the leaves, and Barley is seldom set among the seeds, but with the leaves, for this is chiefly to be boyled; but Mucilaginous seeds are to be added but just before the flowers, as the seeds of Mallows, Marsh-Mallows, &c. lest by too long boyling they make the Decoction too thick and troubled.

I have before said ℔ Catharticks are to be prescribed before the flowers, yet Polypody of the Oak is most usually added amongst the roots, but Epithymum usually among the Flowers, and often in their quantity, (viz. by the Pugil.) correctives are to be placed immediatly after the purgers.

5. Concerning the Liquor this is to be noted, that Wine is usually added to Apozems or Decoctions

in cold affections, obstructions, when gross humors are to be attenuated, or when the force of the Medicine is to be conveyed far into the body; but not so conveniently prescribed, when they say, in equal parts of Wine and Water, because tis without commodity: for if by a most gentle heat, nay warmth, the spirit of Wine (from whence Wine hath his acuteness and energie, and without which Wine is but water without life) in distillation doth ascend, and be elevated into the air the vessel being opened in the boyling; what can we hope for but the whole loss of it by such boiling? hence we must conclude that Wine is much more profitably added at the last after boiling.

Here is to be noted, that the opening roots are usually macerated in Vinegar, with a good Proviso; but they do ill which after pour out the Vinegar, and boyl roots only, robbed of their virtue; for the virtue of them is passed into it, which by this means is pour'd away; for any sharp Liquors do effectually draw forth the force and essence of things, as we may see in Extracts, the Liquor therefore should not be poured away, for it serves to dissolve the things decocted.

6. It is to be noted, that the limits of the decoction is ambiguously defined only; in general, the ingredients should be boyled till they have left all their virtue in the Liquor: which in special some note by the change in the colour; and alteration of the appearance of things, viz. that the hard things should be softned, others wasted. Galen appoints to the Thirds, sometimes to half. Mesue to almost half; modern Writers are various: but that truth may be found, both the faculties and nature of the Medicaments are to be considered; for they whose virtues are easily dissolved are to be boyled the less time, as to the consumption of the third or fourth part, lest the efficacy of the simples consisting in a thin

ſubſtance ſhould vaniſh; but they whoſe virtues will hardly exhale, may be boyled to the waſting of two thirds: they whoſe virtues are of a middle temper may be boyled to halves: And (that which is correſpondent) *thoſe things that are boyld in four times their quantity of* Water, *to the thirds; they which are boyld in* 6 *times their quantity, til half be waſted, as for the moſt part are all* Apozems *and* Decoctions; *from whence this may be gathered, that ſimples of a ſolid cloſe hard ſubſtance, as* Roots, Woods, *and* Barks *that are without ſmel, ſhould be boyld in eight times their quantity of water; thoſe which are of a rare, thin, ſoft, ſubtile ſubſtance, as* Flowers, Spices, Purgers, *in four times their quantity; thoſe of a middle ſubſtance between theſe, as* Leaves, Seeds, *and* Fruits, *in ſix times their quantity of* Water.

7. *Concerning* Clarification, *note that if we deſire the decoction the ſtronger, it is not to be clarified; therefore they do il who boyl it again, and clarifie it with the white of an Egge, becauſe by that means the virtue and eſſence waſteth; it ſhould therefore be thus appointed: firſt it ſhould be placed in* Balneo Mariæ, *or in a pot wel ſtopped, over warm aſhes; ſo is the virtue preſerved, and the dreggs and reſidence which otherwiſe would make it apt to putrifie, wil ſettle to the bottom; and the thin liquor clear in the upper part, as if clarified, may be kept for uſe.*

8. *Concerning the* Form *of* Prescription, *theſe few things are alſo to be noted, that fit words in preſcribing forms and ingredients ought to be obſerved by an Artiſt, leſt he be derided or ſeem unskilful, therefore theſe following things are wont thus to be preſcribed.*

℞. *Of the common, or opening, or diuretical roots macerated a night in white Wine* (*for cold obſtructi-*

ons,

ons, or for them whom Vinegar hurts,) or Vinegar, &c.

Liquorice *shaved and a little bruised, &c.*

The Bark *of the roots of* Capers, *&c.*

The middle Bark *of* Ash, &c.

The middle Bark of Tamarisk; *which three Barks are alway prescribed by the* Montpellians *in Obstructions and Melancholy affections.*

The leaves of Borage, Bugloss, Dandelion, Sorrel, Cichory, Endive *with the roots, or with the whole,* &c.

The tops of Fumitory, Hops, Mallows, Hyssop, Wormwood Pontick, *or the tufts of it,* &c.

Whole Barley (*where you would cleanse and open*) *huld* Barley, *where you would lenifie, and in the affections of the Breast.*

The seeds of Melons *and* Gourds *cleansed; or the kernels of the seeds of* Melons *and* Gourds, *&c.*

Red Vetches, *&c.*

Juniper *berries, &c.*

Pippins *pared and cut in slices, N.* 1, 2, 3.

Raisins of the Sun *picked and stoned, &c.*

Dates *cleansed from their strings, &c.*

Fat Figgs, *or new* Figgs, *&c.*

Sweet Prunes, *&c.*

Kernels of Pine Nuts *washed, &c.*

Make a Decoction in Barley-water *perfectly boyled, &c.*

CHAP.

Chap. II.

Of Julebs.

THis Medicine uſed chiefly for alteration unknown to the antienteſt Greeks, is the invention of the Arabians, ſo called becauſe it is made of ſweet and pleaſant things, the word Julep, or Juleb, ſignifying in the Perſian tongue a ſweet potion; but the latter Greeks after the manner of the Arabians cal it Julapium; and Jolabion: which words yet remain among Phyſitians, although the thing it ſelf be grown out of uſe.

This is found two-fold among Authors, one of the Antients, another of modern Writers.

The Juleb of the Antients is wholly diferent from ours, but ſimple, conſiſting of ſome juyce, diſtild water, infuſion of Barley, or the decoction of one thing and ſugar, moſt commonly made for preſent uſe, as was uſually the Juleb of Roſes. otherwiſe called Alexandrinus, or Regis, moſt famous againſt thirſt and heat.

But the Julep of modern Writers which is at this day every where preſcribed, retains the name of the Antients, not the form, and is every where called a Julep, although ſome very late Writers call it a ſyrup or Serapium. as to this day ſome Italians do, perhaps becauſe a ſyrup is the baſis of Juleps; but at Montpellier they are called Juleps.

But a JULEP is a fluid Medicine compoſed of an appropriate Liquor, and Syrup, (and ſometimes Sugar) mixed together without boyling, for four or five doſes, either to prepare or alter humors otherwiſe, or to ſtrengthen the body.

Hence

Hence this altering Medicine may be judged two-fold; either it prepares the humors for purgation, as the præpotions of the ancient Greeks, *which were fore running potions of general purgations, which may therfore rightly be called a concocting potion; or else alters the humours without any scope or intention of purging: as also the spirits, and other parts of the body: hither appertain a* strengthening *and* Cordial *Julep.*

In this three things are to be considered, the *Composition*, the *use*, and the *benefit*.

In the *Composition* two things chiefly are to be weighed. 1. An appropriat Liquor, of which it is to be made. 2. What things are to be *dissolved* in it.

In the *Liquor* two things are to be regarded, the *quality* and *quantity*.

In relation to the Quality, either there is prescribed a single distilled water, regarding both the affection, and the affected part, which is most frequent (especially in the winter time for the defect of Herbs) either for a *Julep* to prepare the humors, or alter them any other way, or strengthen the faculties of the body.

Or else a distilled water and a juyce together, which is most usual for a Cordial and strengthning Julep.

Or else a decoction for simple potions to be prescribed in half the quantity of an *Apozem*, and almost in the same manner, which is often to be put in practice, for the concoction and alteration of humors.

But the *quantity* for every dose of Liquor is to be prescribed to three ounces, or four ounces; so that when the Julep is prescribed for 3 or 4 doses, the quantity of the Liquor for the whole Julep should be eight ounces, or twelve ounces, if for 3 doses: to twelve ounces, or sixteen ounces, for four

doses, having in the interim regard to the age, and growth of the body; for 4 ounces will hardly be sufficient for great bodies, unless it be powerful in virtue, or strong in taste.

We must mark that when distilled waters, and Juyces are prescribed together; sometimes they are prescribed in equal quantities; sometimes the Juyce, sometimes the water exceeds each other two or three ounces; but you must observe that when the Juyce that is added is sowr or sharp, one ounce, or two ounces wil be enough for a Julep of two doses.

Things to be *dissolved* are considered in respect of their quality and quantity:

A to their *quantity*, either it is sugar alone which is seldom seen, or some appropriate syrup respecting both the affection, and part affected, which is generally received every where.

Besides these *sweetners*, some other thing is alwayes to be dissolved in a Julep: sometimes therfore there is dissolved,

1. In a preparing Julep, if you prescribe it of a decoction like apozems the same things that are dissolved in altering Apozems as aforesaid; for this kinde of Julep is as it were a pretty Apozem.

2. In a Cordial or strengthning Julep, either some cordial Confection, and that alone, as *confectio Alkermes, & de Hiachintho*, especially where we are to strengthen in fluxes of the belly, smal pox, & Worms; or Treacle in contagious times.

Or else some Cordial powder alone, and that either simple, and this again aromatical, as *Saunders*; or not aromatical, as is usual in the smal Pox, as of *Harts-horn, Ivory, Coral, Pearls, Unicorn,*

Unicorns horn, and also in other malignant humors,& in the Worms;as also Coralline among them,*&c.* Or compound, as the powder of some electuary of the shops, as species of *Diamargariti frigidi*,*&c.* as your indications shal require;

Or else some confection and powder together: but because in this respect a Cordial *Juleb* is made of the same things that a strengthening potion is; in his place such a potion uses to be prescribed for one dose only, and so to be renewed as you have occasion: but either of these wayes are unblameable.

Of late, the spirit of *Vitriol* doth often use to be dissolved in *Juleps*, especially where there is an ebullition of the humors to be extinguished,or infection to be taken away,or putrefaction to be prevented; it may also be profitably mixed where humors are to be attenuated whether hot or cold; as also where obstructions are to be opened.

But in relation to the *quantity*, there is usually prescribed for one dose,

Of *sweetners*, from one ounce to an ounce and half at most.

Of *clarified Juyces*, or Liquors made of *decoctions* as being strong, if sowr, half an ounce, if not, one ounce.

Confections from a scruple to two scruples at most.

Powders from one scruple to two scruples at most;if of the rarer sort,as *Bezoar*, to *gr.* 4 or 6. *Unicorns horn* to half a scruple; *Pearls* from half a scruple to one scruple,for the richer sort.

From

From hence it is ealie to find the quantity for a *Julep* for three or four *Doses*: and becauſe *Confections* and *Cordial powders* are eſteemed as one thing, if they are preſcribed together, 'tis not difficult to limit the quantities of both conjoyned.

And if ſpirit of *Vitriol* be uſed, the doſe is preſcribed by ſaying as much as is ſufficient to give it a grateful ſharpneſs (that is which may neither ſmite the Lungs, or ſet the teeth on edge.)

The *uſe* and *form* of *preſcribing* is ſet down thus: R. &c. (that is, the Liquor and things convenient to be diſſolved in it) make a *Julep* for three or four morning doſes, (it may alſo be preſcribed for the evening, eſpecially if it be a *Cordial*, and for one doſe.)

But if the Julep be made of a decoction, it is to be preſcribed in the ſame manner as an Apozem.

If beſides the *Liquor*, and *Syrups* (of which only the more ſimple Juleps both for altering and preparing are uſually compoſed) you ſhal add ſome ſimple or compound ſtrengthening powder to aromatize it; you may ſay, make a Julep which ſhal be aromatized with one dram, or one dram and a half of ſuch a powder, for three or four Doſes

The Juleps of *Infants* are to be preſcribed, out of a ſpoon twice or thrice a day.

The *benefit* and fruit of a Julep is very plentiful, as the uſe of them is at this day famous. Firſt, when you deſire to prepare the humors for purging; for by this double form the concoction of the humours is perfected, *viz.* of a Julep and Apozem, and is chiefly to be preſcribed in the *Spring* and *Autumn*, for the ſame end.

same end. A *Concocting Julep* is chiefly useful for the Winter, and may supply the place of an Apozem, when not easily to be prepared, either through the defect of green herbs, or want of opportunity to keep them dryed; or by the scantiness of time, or urgency of the affection, cannot be made ready neither that nor any other altering Medicine that requires much labour, then an extemporary Julep may be prepared by the mixture of distill'd waters and syrups, and some fit Confection, and this way also is cheaper for the poorer sort; so that a concocting Julep may be the deputy of an altering Apozem; but although by this means there is a present remedy applicable, both safe and pleasant, yet can it not be expected to have the same efficacy, for the virtues of an Apozem are much more effectual.

2*ly*. When your indications require the alteration of the body, humors, or spirits, without intention of a succeeding purgation; but chiefly to extinguish any fervent heat of them, or Fevers, or other hot affections, or to bridle the malignity of them.

They are used chiefly against hot distempers, to which they are peculiarly dedicated, as also to repress the heat of the Head and Heart, continual and burning *Fevers*, that are troublesom by their intolerable heat; as also to quench the ardencies of the Liver, Reins, and Bowels, and to quench the thirst.

So also is the ardor of the humors restrained and if any malignity be joyned with it, it wil be commodiously repressed by this cooling Cordial Liquor; so are they usual to prevent the malice of the disease, strengthen the heart, restore the strength

strength, confirm the spirits and vigour, through the whole course of the disease, and partly to alter the affections themselves.

So also to restrain the motion of the humors, as eruptions of blood, from what part soever; as in the beginning of *Pleurisies* following the preposterous motion of the spirits, as in extraordinary watchings, &c.

In summe, this liquid form is convenient to prepare humors for purging, to strengthen the heart, restore strength suddenly, or alter to any other intention; to perform it speedily when the parts afflicted, either humors or affections, lye deep in the body; to which place alterers in any other form cannot so wel be conveighed.

Chap: III.

Of Potions.

A Potion *is a liquid form of* Medicine, *made of things conducing to the purpose, either* Cathartick, Cordials, *or others dissolved in a meet Liquor, to be prescribed for one dose only, and to be drunk down (from whence the name) prepared either to purge, strengthen, or alter the body any manner of way.*

Hence a Potion is usually 3 *fold,* Purgative, Cordial, *or* Strengthening, *and* altering.

A Purging *Potion*

Is often understood under the name of Potion *spoken simply, so that this name is generally received to signifie a* purging Potion, *and of late is called a*

dose, *because it is not to be drank otherwise then at one time, not at divers, unless some dayes after, or some short time be interposed.*

But it is a liquid form of a Medicine composed of a purging Medicine, decocted or infused, or dissolved some other way in a Liquor and added, and a syrup; to be given at once, purging either some certain humor or divers, and specifically casting it out by stool.

Hence the differences of a purging Potion are taken from the difference of humours they cast forth; hence some are Cholagogues, *some* Phlegmagogues, *others* Hydragogues, *others* Melanagogues, *and others composed of all these proprieties are called* Panchymagogues, *or* Holagogues.

In general three things are to be considered in them, *Composition, Use,* and *Profit* or *Utility.*

In COMPOSITION two things are to be regarded, an apt Liquor of which it is made, and such things as are to be dissolved in it.

The LIQUOR that is fit to dissolve your *Medicines* for a purging potion, is to be considered in *quality* and *quantity.*

In respect of the *quality*, there is prescribed either, 1. Some *Decoction*, or

2. Some *Infusion*, or

3. Both *Decoction* and *Infusion* together, or

4. Some other Liquor serving to the scope and intention of the Physitian.

In special, 1. the *decoction* that is usually prepared to make a *Potion* is either purging, alterine or both together.

A purging decoction is usually prescribed of only *Senna*, (for a Liquor to purge Melancholy and Phlegme) to half an ounce, six drams, or o

ounc

ounce, (according as you intend to purge; or some other purgative of the shops, *viz.* electuary or syrup, to be dissolved in the Liquor) adding it's proper correctives, as *Aniseed, Cloves*, &c. to 1 dram: you may also add of the cordial flowers (as *Borage, Bugloss, Violets*) of each P. *j.* and at *Mont Pellier* they call these sorts of decoctions simply purging decoctions, and take it absolutely so, when some purging Medicine, as for example, *Diacarthamum*, is prescribed to be given with it.

And this sort of decoction may be made of other Catharticks in such a quantity that may suffice for one dose; according to the diversity of the humors, adding also their Correctors, as for your Phlegmagogue potion *Turbith*, *Carthamus*; and *Hermodactils*: for a Melenagogue, *Polypody*, *Epithymum*, and *Senna*: but the first is least in use, because *Senna* can make the Liquor sufficiently purging to supply their place, and make it otherwise satisfie the divers intentions of the Physitian: but this sort of purging decoctions are very necessarily and profitably to be prescribed when we want the proper purging Electuary, or would purge that only humor; which often happens in a phlegmagogue, and melanagogue potion; for seeing there is no Electuary that merely purgeth phlegme, if the indication require such a purge, prescribe your decoction of *Senna* for the *basis*, adding *Carthamus*; or if you would have it work more strongly, or draw from remote parts, add *Turbith*, or *Hermodactus*, to the fourth part of that proportion that is prescribed for a purging Apozem, correctives also being added; so because there is no Melanagogue effectual, (for *Diasenna* is weak) or safe, (for *confectio hamech* the great-

er composition being both dangerous, & of doubtful operation is seldom used) and the lesser so cryed up against Melancholy, rather purgeth choler) for it neither hath *Senna* (a chief purger of Melancholy) and the whole composition hath but ten parts of Melanagogues, but of *Cholagogues viz.* of *Sammony*, forty eight parts or doses; so that the purgers of choler are more then the purgers of melancholy by above three parts; therefore for these causes when Melancholy only is to be purged, we rightly prescribe a decoction of *Senna*, *Epithymum*, *Polypody*, *Fumitory*, &c. thus much for a purging decoction.

An *altering decoction* such as is used at this day every where, may be presumed two-fold, one usual of the shops such as the Apothecaryes make every where, without the prescription of a Physitian: Another which is never made but for the present occasion, and this may fitly be called a *Magisterial decoction.*

The shop decoction is three-fold, *viz.* the *common decoction for a Medicine*; the *decoction of fruits and flowers, and the pectoral decoction.*

The *common* decoction for a Medicine, so called because it is commonly used to make purging potions with all as fit for every part and humour, is thus compounded.

Take of Barley *P. j.* sweet *Prunes* 4 or 6 pair, *Raisins of the Sun*, and *Liquorice* shaved and a little bruised, *ana.* half an ounce, *Aniseed*, *Fennel seed*, and the four greater cold seeds (in the summer,) *ana.* 2 drams, the 3 Cordial flowers, *ana. p. j.* Make a *decoction.*

But

But it is not wont to be thus usually prescribed in every particular by the Physitian, but uses to be noted singly in the receipt by its name, which is also to be understood of the decoction of flowers, and fruits, and the pectoral decoction.

The use of this decoction is three-fold, for it serves both to dissolve simple purgers in, but chiefly compound, as *Electuaries* and syrups for *potions*, which is most usual; or else to infuse simple purgers in: or lastly, to decoct them in, to the same scope or purpose.

2. The decoction of Fruits and flowers is made of *Liquorice shaved, &c.* and *Tamarinds*, ana, two drams, *Raisins of the Sun stoned* half an ounce, *Jujubes, Sebestens, sweet Prunes, ana.* 4 *pair*, *flowers of Borage and Bugloss, ana. pug.* 1. &c. Make a decoction.

In *Italy* where this is most frequent, they use to make it purgative, by adding *Senna* to half an ounce, or six drams; and there they use it to dissolve other Medicines in, that are proper for the *Breast* and *Reins* chiefly, and also for the Cholerick

The pectoral decoction of *Mesues* particularly intended for the affections of the Breast consists of whole *Barley*, P. 1. *Liquorice and Raisins of the sun, ana: half an ounce, Maidenhair, M j. Hyssop dryed, M. ß. fat Figgs, Jujubes, and Sebestens, ana, three pair, or in number, six.* Make a *Decoction.*

The principal use of this is in cold affections of the Breast, to dissolve Medicines in that purge flegme, or to infuse them, or boyl them in.

Sometimes this it self is made purgative by adding *Senna*, as i s said in the cordial Decoction.

The *Magisterial* or altering Decoction that is prescribed by the Physitian for present use, and is never otherwise extant in the Apothecaries shops, is composed of divers parts of plants, which are to be prescribed to a quarter of the proportion of the altering Apozem aforesaid, (for as that is ordained for four doses, so is this for one only) although to avoid trouble in the dispensation of it, you need not add all the parts of the several plants that are in an Apozem, to make a heap, but 'twil suffice if you prescribe the leaves, or two or three which you shal see most convenient, of each one *pugil. &c.*

This sort of decoctions is extream profitable and necessary, as often as it is convenient to be used, whereby the purging Medicine dissolved is made amicable to the part with which otherwise it would have no conveniency; or if of it self it have no peculiar inclination to the humor, it is by this means made correspondent; hence you must choose for these Decoctions, simples which have a propriety to the parts affected, and that may direct the force of the purging Medicine to the humour by a secrret disposition they obtain; then wil the commodity of the purging Medicine appear most plentiful in it's operation.

But the chief use of this decoction is to be a convenient *Vehiculum* for the decoction, insusion, or dissolution of your appropriate purgers.

Sometimes in the place of an altering decoction is substituted (to the same end) the broth of a Chicken alter'd with the leaves of *Endive, Sorrel, Maidenhair, Borage,* &c. the use of this is best in hot distempers, in the summer time especialy, to dissolve *Cathartick* i n.

A

A Decoction both *altering* and *purging* is often prescribed, for reasons before mentioned, two several wayes.

1. Either it is prescribed with *Senna* alone boyled in one of the common decoctions of the shops, or in a magisterial decoction, for a potion to purge either Melancholy or Phlegm, which is now very frequent.

2. Or else with other purgers boyled with it in the decoction, as is before said in the purging decoction, which is also a received practice.

And the use of this is as those before, either to infuse, boyl, or dissolve purgers in.

II. INFUSION: as to infusion, you must understand that here by that word is meant the maceration or steeping of any thing in a fit Liquor, whereby it's virtue loosened from its earthy body is conveyed (after the manner of tinctures) into the liquor, which impregnated with those virtues is called an infusion or dilution.

In it two things are considerable, 1. The purgers that are to be *infused*, and 2. The Liquor in which they are to be *macerated*.

In both the *quality* and *quantity* are to be regarded.

The things to be *infused* in respect of their quality may be all purgers, as *Senna*, *Agarick*, &c. (except *Manna*: and also *Aloes* and *Coloquintida*, for their bitterness) for at this day in *Paris* they often infuse *Cassia Fistula*.

In relation to their *Quantity*: if the infusion only should be sufficiently purging without dissolving any other either simple or compound Cathartick in the strained Liquor, they ought to be prescribed in a larger quantity, than if they were

given in substance, yea in a double proportion, if they are the stronger sort: or in a treble quantity if they are the gentler sort, adding also their proper correctors, to a four-fold proportion, if strong: or to a six-fold quantity, if weaker.

The Liquor as to the quality is either simple, as common water which draws forth the virtues of things but slowly, or some certain *distilled water*, especially in hot affections: *Whey of Milk* in *Melancholy*, the *broth of flesh*, and *Aqua vitæ*, which is indued with a wonderful faculty of extracting the virtues, dissolving the spirits, and operating substance of things, and attracting it to it self; in which it surpasseth all others; and therefore chiefly to be used for cold affections, and infusions to correct Phlegme and Melancholy, a smal portion of it being mixt with the Liquor of the infusion. White *Wine* is next in praise for extracting and inbibing the virtues of things, which is most fit in cold affections, if you make the infusion in it and water, of each a like quantity; or otherwise you may find some other convenient Liquor.

Or else compound, as some of the aforesaid decoctions.

The *Quantity* is not determined, but left to the discretion of the Apothecary, & is prescribed by the Physitian with q. s. that is, a sufficient quantity.

But although in general the infusion of Cathartick̃s be so used as is said, that of all, or either, you may excusedly prepare an infusion for purges to better purpose than when they are boyled, as is said in the Apozem; yet more *specially* of late it is grown in use, only to have two kindes of infusions for the Liquor of a purging potion, which as most usual are wont to be generally prescribed.

℞ An infusion of *Rhubarb* alone, to one dram,

or a dram and a half, correctives as *Cinamom* or *Spikenard* being added to gr. 6 or half a scruple in cold persons; or else in hot tempers, yellow *Saunders* to half a scruple, for the liquor of a Cholagogue potion, as also for a Phlegmagogue. 2. Or the infusion of *Rheubarb* from 1 dram to a dram and half, 2 scruples of *Agarick* being newly made into troches being added with his correctors, for a phlegmagogue potion, or where Phlegme and Choler are mixed together.

An infusion is usually made in the distill'd waters of *Endive* and *Succory*, as in Cholerick people; or *Plantain water*, if a flux of the belly be present: it may also be made either in an altering or purging decoction, or some of the afore-mentioned, or in some other appropriat Liquor.

III. A DECOCTION and INFUSION together are very usual; & when it shal be prescribed, let such purgers with their Correctors be infused in s. q. of some of the above-mentioned decoctions; to which purpose are *Rheubarb* and *Agarick* only usually admitted; so at this day it is most usual and frequent, to have the decoction of *Senna* prescribed to be mixed with the infusion of *Rheubarb* alone, or *Agarick*; according as the indications require; a potion purging either Phlegme, Melancholy, or adust choler.

IV. Any other LIQUOR that can satisfie the intention of the Physitian, is sometimes taken to make a purging potion, and dissolve Cathartick in; as for example, any of these, as *Diacarthamum*, and may be prescribed to half an ounce, or six drams, to be dissolved in such a water or broth, and to be made into a potion; and this is chiefly useful, when sometimes, (as in a sudden case,

through

through the urgency of the affection, or the shortness of time, or want of leisure, or for other inconveniences) decoctions, or infusions cannot be prepared.

As to the quality of the Liquor, some distilled water respecting the part affected, and humor that is to be evacuated, is to be chosen; or broth (so we usually prescribe *Manna* to be taken in broth, either simple of flesh, or else of a chick alter'd with cooling herbs for the cholerick; so for phlegm a tablet of *Diacarthamum* is usually prescribed with them, or else white Wine, with which the root *Mechoacan* and *Jalop* (which of late is come in use, for the same things that *Mechoacan* is used) are usually taken, in substance to one dram, or one dram and a half, after they have slightly infused, for phlegmatick and serous humors; or else Whey of Milk, or Mead; but this matter is treated of thrice before.

As to the quantity, the dose of the liquor in which the things are to be dissolved, varies much according to the age of the Patient; for to Boyes two ounces wil suffice, to Youths three ounces, to elder people four or five ounces at most; because seeing they require a greater quantity of purging Medicines, to be moved with all, unless you dilute them with a considerable quantity of Liquor, your potions wil be too thick and ungrateful.

Things to be *DISSOLVED* are considered either in *quantity*, or *quality*.

In relation to the *quality*, there are dissolved,

1. Purgers, *viz.* when the Liquor of the potion is little or not enough purgative, which because it usually happens, there are for the most part alwayes purgers dissolved in it.

2. *Al*

2. *Alterers, viz.* sweetners, which are alwayes to be dissolved in it, for the better relish sake;

Purgers that are to be dissolved in it are either simple or compound.

Simples are, *Manna*, *Cassia*, which are usual in purging choler gently; as also to lenifie the affections of the Breast, and Reins: or hard & dry, *viz.* in the form of powder, as usually the powder of *Rhubarb*, in the spitting of blood, dysentery, or other flux of the belly, *&c. Mechoacan* for phlegmatick and watterish humors, and the root of *Jalop*, which of late is used in the room of *Mechoacan*.

Compounds are either officinal or magisterial.

Officinal, or the purgers of the shops, are either syrups, as *Syrup of Roses solutive*, of *Succory with Rheubarb*, of *Fumitory compound*, *De pomis Regis Sabor* (if to be had) honey of Roses strained.

Or Electuaries, which are either soft as Opiates, or solid as *Tabulets*; *Opiates* either purge al humors, as *Catholicon*; or phlegm only, as *Diaphœnicon*, *Indum minus*, *benedicta Laxativa*, *Hiera picra*, though unpleasantly; or Choler, as *Diaprunum simplex*, *Diacassia*, *Trypherа Persica*, *Diaprunum solutivum*, *Electuar. of Roses Mesues*, *Electuary de Psillio*; or Phlegm and Choler together, as *Diaphœnicum*, *Indum minus*; or Melancholy, as *Catholicon* best of al, *Diasenna solutive*, *Confectio hamech minor*; or else watrish humors, as *Benedicta laxative*; solid Electuaries either respect choler, as *Electi: de succo rosar:* or phlegme, as *Diacarthamum*, *Electuary de citro solutive*, or Choler and Phlegme together, as the two last.

Or some powder extant in the shops, as *Diatur-*

turbith in *Germany*, for phlegm and wateriſh humors.

Magiſterial purgers uſe to be preſcribed by the Phyſitian, for preſent uſe, and as is the infuſion of *Rheubarb* alwayes preſcribed, but chiefly for cholerick humours, thus; Let the infuſion of 1 dram, or a dram and a half of *Rheubarb* made in *Endive*, or *Succory water*; or elſe the expreſſion of one dram, or a dram and half of *Rheubarb*: or the infuſed Liquor of one dram, or a dram and a half of *Rheubarb*; for theſe three wayes ſound the ſame thing.

Alterers or *Sweetners*, beſides thoſe now mentioned, are uſually ſyrups, (but *Manna* is often given alone with broth; *Diacarthamum*, *Rheubarb*, & *Mechoacan* are moſt commonly preſcribed to be taken in white Wine.

And theſe in reſpect of their quality are onely uſed as alterers (if the decoction or infuſion be ſufficiently purging it ſelf; or if a ſufficient quantity of other purgers be diſſolved in the ſtrained Liquor,) and thoſe reſpecting both the humour, and part affected, from whence ſucceeds a happy event.

Or purgers alſo, when things are otherwiſe; and the moſt uſual, for al potions almoſt is ſyrup of *Roſes ſolutive*.

But in relation to the quantity, in general, the doſe of the purgers to be diſſolved ſhal be more or leſs, according as the decoction or infuſion, or both, ſhal be nothing at al, or more or leſs purging: for Cathartick̃s are to be diſſolved in ſuch a quantity that they may make one whole and allowable doſe with the ſimple purgers (if any be either decocted or infuſed;) which may eaſily be known

known by the several doses both of simple and compound purgers: as for example, the dose of *Senna* in a decoction, that it may only moderately purge, is an ounce, or an ounce and a half, or rather from half an ounce to an ounce; of *Rhubarb* in the infusion, that it might moderately purge, frō a dram and half, to half an ounce; so that if you prescribe a decoction, of half an ounce of *Senna*, in which it should be infused, because half an ounce is onely one third of the dose in which it may be given, that is, of an ounce and a half, in which it purgeth moderately; and also prescribe one dram of *Rhuebarb*, which is but a fourth part of the whole dose of *Rheubarb*; it comes to pass that these joyned make only 7 twelfths of the whole dose, which make not up the whole dose by five twelfths, to supply wch you must dissolve so much of some fit Electuary as may make the dose compleat, as *Electuary Diacarthamum*, whose dose since it is six drams, you must borrow from thence 7 twelfths, *viz.* two drams & a half, so have you the proportion which may allowably be dissolved, that with the help of the others it may moderately purge the body, where other contingencies are indifferent. And thus the dose of those things that are to be dissolved is to be examined, that al things may be prescribed safely, not dangerously or by chance.

But in *special*, when the Liquor of a potion is little or nothing purging, at *Montpellier* for a body where al things are moderate, we may dissolve *Manna* to 2 ounces, or 3 ounces.

Cassia in a smal quantity, and not unless some powerful indication require it, (as in lenifying the affections of the breast and Reins,) because it makes potions gross and ungrateful if it should be

be dissolved in his legitimate dose, therefore 'twil be best to dissolve not above three drams, or four drams; but that this smal quantity may be made up, you may add the stronger sort of purging electuaries to three drams, or half an ounce; wherefore usually that it may be more acceptable in potions, 'twere better to infuse it as they do at *Paris*.

Rhewbarb if it be dissolved in substance against the dysentery or flux of the belly, *&c.* you may do it to one scruple, half a dram, or one dram; for a purging powder should not much exceed one dram, otherwise it may be too thick, and thereby ungrateful;

Mechoacan to one dram, and a dram and half.

Jalop to one dram.

Syrup of Roses solutive new to three ounces, and four ounces, for old syrup is not used.

Some things are seldom used or dissolved, to purge by themselves, as the *Syrup of Roses solutive*, unless in delicate persons, as to them that are easily purged, or else (as it is sometimes) when the decoction of it self is very purgative.

Electuaries of the shops in the form of opiats, if gentle, *as diaprunis simple, diacassia, Trypbera Persica, Diasebesten, Catholicon*, (though seldom) to one ounce, or an ounce and half at most; for in a greater quantity they thicken the Liquor too much; *diaprunis solutive*, and *Electuary de Psillio*, to half an ounce, six drams, or one ounce at most for strong people, *Indum minus*, *Diaphœnicum*, from three drams to six drams: *Benedicta laxativa*, from two drams to five drams.

But those which are in the form of *Tabulets*, as *diacarthamum*, *de citro solutive*, *de succo rosarum*, from 3 drams to six drams at most in the strongest people.

The

The dose of the *infusion* of *Rhubarb* is above-mentioned.

Sweetning syrups, when altering, (although purgers are only dissolved) from one ounce to an ounce and half; when purging, from one ounce to half an ounce, unless you would purge with them only, which is seldom seen.

The USE and FORM of prescribing is various, according to the variety of the Liquor.

I. If the Liquor be any of the above-mentioned decoctions, 'tis prescribed. ℞. *&c.* (*viz.* the said ingredients) make a decoction in q. s. (of a fit Liquor) to three ounces, or four ounces, strain in it, *&c.* (or without straining make a decoction, *&c.*) take of the strained Liquor three ounces, or four ounces (for either way is usual) in which dissolve, *&c.* make a potion to be taken in the morning with care and order, having eaten a light supper the night before.

But if you would not describe your decoction at length, 'twil be sufficient, if (having set down the purgers) you prescribe any, as for example, the decoction of *Endive*, *Agrimony*, *Maidenhair*, *&c.* Make a potion, *&c.*

II. If of any officinal decoction, ℞. *&c.* (*viz.* the things that are to be dissolved) with q. s. of such a decoction, make a potion, *&c.* or else turning the order say, ℞ *&c.* (*viz.* of such or such a decoction ℥ ounces) in which dissolve, *&c.* Make a potion.

This same form is likewise commonly used, with the common purging decoction of the Shops.

℥ If

II. If of an infusion. Rx. *&c.* (*viz.* those things that are to be infused) make an infusion in q: s. of some Liquor before mentioned (over hot embers twelve hours, or a whole night; or if you please without noting the time) then strain it, and dissolve in it, *&c.* so make a potion.

It may otherwise be more briefly prescribed thus. Rx. The expression of one dram, or a dram and half of *Rheubarb* made in a fit water, in which dissolve, *&c.* So make a Potion.

This is to be noted, that when *Mechoacan*, or the root of *Jalop* are infused, they should be prescribed to be infused in white Wine; so let it be given in the morning with the usual ordering, without any expression to one dram, or a dram and half.

IV. If of a decoction, and an infusion together, Rx. *&c. viz.* those things that are necessary to be boyled; make a decoction in q. s. of some appropriat Liquor, in a sufficient quantity of the strained Liquor, infuse, *&c. viz.* those things mentioned before in the infusion; then having strained them dissolve *&c.* so make a potion; and this order is now most usual.

V. If without these, the potion be prescribed of some other Liquor, then thus. Rx. *&c. viz.* the purger that is to be dissolved, as *Diacarthamum*, six drams; to purge a phlegmatick person, make it into a potion with s: q: of such a Liquor.

The UTILITY: a *potion* in general is very commodious when we have an indication of purging, either with a minorative Medicine to lessen the humors before concoction, or an eradicating Medicine to exclude the humour already prepared and concocted, or else of otherwise evacuating it with-

without this preparation, which seeing it may be done with Medicines under the three-fold form of pils, boles, and potions, (for powders and purging tablets, as also syrups never come in use, unless in the form of a potion, dissolved in some convenient Liquor) of these a *potion* is to be preferred in these cases,

When humours in respect of their scituation are gathered in the first region of the body; and are to be expell'd without any perturbation of the body, not to be drawn from far, for in this liquid form the purging quality soon descends into the belly with the Liquor, and is soon communicated to it, so that in so short a time the purging quality cannot be diffused to the more remote parts, (although some smal evacuation happen also to them by consecution of the humors) unless you boyl or dissolve stronger Medicines, and in a greater quantity, which cannot be done so safely; in which case pils are better, which staying long in the belly, the virtue of them at last insinuates it self into the habit of the body; therefore a potion is most commodious, in affections of the stomack, and neighbouring parts, *Pancreas*, *Mesentery*, *Spleen*, *Liver*, and other interior parts.

But in respect of the several sorts of humors to be evacuated, the form of a potion (as also of a bole) doth more agree with tempers and affections that are cholerick then the solid form of pils; because both to moisten, lenifie, and cool, (which three properties such a hot and dry constitution requires,) those things which are suppable and liquid do more aptly perform, and therefore rather to be used, unless a great weakness of the stomack, and a broken strength (which are more

dissolved by Liquid things) require the contrary: then 'tis better to use pils or boles.

'Tis also very profitable to purge Melancholy, because this humor as it were dusty with drought may be washed down by such actual moisture, and the wayes by which it is to pass made slippery, and al other hinderances relaxed and moistened; 'Tis also very useful in phlegmatick affections, unless the stomack be very weak, so that the plegm be found in the first or second region of the body: for if it be in the third Region, or remote parts, it wil be little advantagious, unless composed of the stronger and greater quantity of purgers from whence danger.

'Tis also useful in obstructions of gross, dry, condentated humors; and also in the summer, as pils in the winter.

A Corroborating Potion.

A Corroborating Potion, which also sometime is called a Julep, drink, or Cordial potion; is a liquid form of medicine composed of Confections, or Cordial powders, and a syrup dissolved in a fit liquor to strengthen and confirm the principal parts, restore strength, and help the peculiar affections of the heart.

In this three things are considerable, the *Composition*, *Use*, and *Utility*.

In COMPOSITION two things are to be regarded.

1. A *fit Liquor* of which 'tis made.
2. *What things are to be dissolved* in it.

The Liquor is to be regarded in relation to his *quality*, and *quantity*.

In

*I*n relation to his quality there is prescribed.

1. *S*ome distill'd Cordial water, as of *Borage*, &c.

2. *S*ome distill'd water and a convenient juice together, which is most usual; for 'tis seldome made of a Juyce alone, and seldom also of decoctions or infusions.

In respect to its *quantity* the dose is the same, as of the purging potion, three ounces, or four ounces, yet in summer, and in the great heat of Fevers, and other hot affections, you may prescribe a *larger* quantity.

Things to be dissolved, are also considered in respect to their quality and quantity.

In relation to the quality there is alwayes dissolved some fit Cordial syrup, and besides it alwayes,

1. Either some Cordial confection alone, as usually Confection Alchermes, de Hyacintho, *&c.* of which see in the Juleps.

2 Or some Cordial powder alone, and that either simple, as *Harts-horn, Coral, Bolearmoniack, Terra sigillata, Pearls, Fragments of pretious stones, Unicorns horn, Bezar stone*, these may be prescribed, and are to be chosen according to the urgency and variety of the affections: Or else compound, as the powder of some electuary of the shops, (as *Diamargaritum frigidum, &c.*) and this is most usual to be prescribed for this sort of Cordial Potions, as the simples are though much seldomer.

3 Or some Confection or powder together.

In relation to the quantity, syrups are usually prescribed to an ounce and an ounce and half.

Cordial confections from half an ounce, to an ounce, and an ounce and half at most.

Cordial powders from one scruple to two scruples, or one ounce at most.

But if it be of the more scarce and pretious sort, let it not exceed one scruple; so for the most part 'tis prescribed to half a scruple, and one scruple.

The *fragment of pretious stones and Unicornshorn* from *gr.* 5, to half a dram.

Bezoar stone to *gr.* 4, or 6.

Confections and powders together are so to be prescribed that they may compleat the whole dose, taking the greater quantity of this or that, or equal parts as you see fit.

The USE is for 1 dose only, according to the present necessity, at any time of the day, or the disease.

And this is the usual FORM of PRESCRIBING. R *&c. viz.* the Liquor, in which dissolve, *&c.* so make a potion to be taken at such or such an hour.

Mark this, that because some Cordials are dissolved in the potion, they may be prescribed in the said form: or else without the straining after dissolution 'tis usual to prescribe all the ingredients, adding only, *Make a potion.*

The UTILITY: 'Tis very effectual against divers affections of the heart, as *Swooning, panting, &c.* malignant affections, poysons: and when it is to be strengthened, being made weak by the violence of diseases; as also when the virtues of it, and al other principal parts are dejected, they are through the continuance of the whole disease to be assisted and restored; being weakned, to be strengthened, and confirmed, being exhausted, to be recruited.

An altering Potion.

THat is to be called an altering Potion which is under a Liquid form not allotted either to purge hurtful humors, or comfort the strength of the body oppressed, so it be to alter any way, or evacuate, so it do it not by purging, (as in expelling the stone of the Reines, *&c.*) prescribed for one onely dose to be taken by the mouth at one time

The COMPOSITION of it is the same, as of the corroborating potion, *viz.* of a Liquor fitted for your present intention, either a distill'd water only, or else some Juyce or decoction being added to it, and some convenient powder, to be altered according to the variety of your indications, and a proper syrup serving to the intention of the Physitian; all which are prescribed in the dose, & after the same manner as the strengthening potion, as you may perceive by one or two examples following.

A somniferous potion, restoring and corroborating the strength exhausted by over-watchings.

℞. *Water of red Poppyes, water Lillies, and Lettuce, of each two ounces, syrup of white Poppy, one ounce, syrup of Violets, half an ounce, Confectio Alkermes, half a dram. Make a potion to be taken at the time of going to sleep.*

A Potion for the Worms, and also Cordial.

Take the water of Purslane, and grass, of each two ounces, Confection of Hyacinth, half a dram, powder of Earthworms dryed, one scruple, Coralin, and the shavings

vings of Hartshorn, of each one ſcruple, ſyrup of Lemons one ounce. So make a potion.

A potion to haſten delivery of a Child.

Take Hypocras (made by the infuſion of Cinnamon, and Dittany in white Wine) four ounces, or five ounces, Cinnamon water half an ounce, Confectio Alchermes one dram, Saffron half a ſcruple, ſyrup of Mugwort one ounce. So make a potion.

Chap. IV.

Of Syrups.

Divers ſimples there are, Herbs, Roots Seeds, Fruits, Flowers, and others, or the Juyces of them, which cannot be had alwayes when need requires them, eſpecially in winter, and autumn, that decoctions, infuſions, or other Medicines may be prepared of them for a preſent uſe: or elſe they cannot be preſerved ſound, without loſs of their virtues ſo long a time: or if they may, yet the urgency of the affection, or other inconveniencies do not alwayes allow ſuch leiſure as to attend the preparing of Medicines of them in divers forms, or til the virtues of them may be ſufficiently extracted, from hence appears the neceſſity of ſyrups for the divers virtues of Plants thus kept and preſerved by the beneſit of Sugar or Honey, in the form of a ſyrup, are alwayes ready for uſe in every preſſing neceſſity to ſerve for the various ſcope of the Phyſitian; and are preſerved ſound without any depravation, having joyned with them a grateful taſte; ſo that ſyrups are as

it

it were a certain preserving of a medicinal Liquor, Juyce, decoction, or infusion, in which is retained the efficacy of the Medicines.

But a Syrup is the invention of the Arabians, *and was scarce known to the antient* Greeks; *we read of only mention made of Oximel and cute, in* Galen, *and* Hypocrates; *after whose example the* Mauritanians *have adorned their pharmacentic's art with a various collection of Syrups: the modern* Greeks *as* Actuarius, *cals it* Serapium.

Some derive this name from the Greek, *others from the* Arabick, *but this is little considerable.*

Whatsoever it is, though at this time it be taken either properly; for that which I shal describe, and for that which is extant in the shops, or improperly for a decoction preparing humors, or an Apozem (as Rondeletius *and* Jeubertus *have written) as an altering Julep, for the* Italians *at this day cal a Julep* Serapium, *(perhaps because a Syrup is the basis of a Julep) yet at* Montpelier.

A SYRUP: *is a fluid form of a Medicine, made of a decoction, Juyces or an infusion, preserved with Sugar or Honey, boyled to such a consistence, that a drop on a marble or plate may not spread abroad, prepared either to alter or purge.*

It is of two sorts, an altering Syrup (as was the Syrup of the Antients, and this hath been revived by our latest Physitians) and a purging Syrup.

The altering Syrup.

The definition of an altering Syrup is to be sought among those things which we have said before in the altering Apozem, as also the differences there set down.

But for the clearer method, use, and prescription sake, it is two-fold, Officinal and Magisterial.

The officinal or uſual is that which is publickly extant every where in the Apothecarys ſhops, of which I will here make mention, becauſe in the uſe of it, and in reſpect of the preſcribing of it, many things occur neceſſary to be known, hereafter to be rehearſed.

And this diverſly divided, as wel in relation to its virtues, as its compoſition.

The differences taken from the virtues are conſidered either in general, hot, cold, moiſt, dry, temperate.

Or in ſpecial: in reſpect of the humors, and other parts of the body.

In relation to the humors, it alters either in the firſt qualities; to which belong according to the diverſity of the humor, that which alters, concocts, digeſts, prepares either choler, phlegm, melancholy, or blood; *or in the ſecond qualities, in which number are contained* thoſe which cut, attenuate, incraſſat, cleanſe, binde; *or in the third qualities, hither are referd* thoſe which cauſe eaſy coughing, lenifie, expectorate, provoke Urine, break the Stone, provoke the courſes, condenſe the parts, expel poyſon, and corroborate.

In regard of the parts which they properly reſpect, ſome are Cephalical, others Cordial, &c. which you may ſeek among the ſtore of Phyſical remedies; here I ſhal only propound the diviſion of the Officinal ſyrups, according to their compoſition and faculties, onely conſidered generally, becauſe other things more appertain to the phyſical magazeen; withal intending to give a Catalogue of the more uſual ſort, becauſe ſome are here in uſe, which in other places are grown obſolete, and ſo on the contrary; neither is there the ſame number in uſe every where; here is to be noted

noted that those which have a star at their beginning fixed to them, are at *Montpelier*, of the more usual sort.

The altering Officinal Syrup is compounded either,

1. *Of* Juyces *only, and this is either temperate, as Syrup of the juyce of* *Borage, of Bugloss, *Bizantines *of* Melue, *of* Fumitory *simple*, *Oxymel *simple.*

Or Cooling, as simple Syrup of *Vinegar, and Oxysaccarum, Syrup of Verjuyce, of the juyce of Sorrel, Alexandrinus or Julep of Roses, of the juyce of Citrons, Barberries, * Quinces, of the juyce of Succory, Endive, Pomegranates both sowr and sweet, of Limons, of Apples, of red Corans, of Violets.*

Or heating, as simple Syrup of Betony, *Mivа of Quinces though moderately, especially the aromatical, Oxymel of Squils, though moderately.*

2. *Of* Infusion, *and this also is cooling, as Syrup of water Lillies simple h. of red *Poppyes, and of dryed Roses.*

3. *Of a* Decoction, *and this is either*

Cooling, *as Syrup of *Succory compound, of *Jujubes, yet moderately, of white Poppy, h.*

Or heating, *as Syrup de Althea of* Fernelius, *of Bettony compound, of the barks of Citron, of Calamint, of *Hyssop, of * Horehound, of the two roots, of the five roots, of *Stæchados, of Colts foot, h.*

4. Of infusion made in

Juyces and Decoction together, and is either

Cooling, *as Oxysaccarum compound, Syrup of Purslane*, h.

Or heating, *as Syrup of *Wormwood, *Mints, Oxymel compound.*

Or some other Liquor *and a decoction, and is either* temperate, *as Syrup of * Maidenhair, and of Liquorice, which is moderately hot, or* heating, *as Syrup of Mugwort.*

V. *Or a decoction and a Juyce, and this is either temperate, as Bizantinus compound, or* cooling, *as ſyrup of Vineger compound;* but moderately, *of Endive compound; of Mirtles, of water Lillies compound; or* heating, as ſyrup *de Eupatorio, or Maudiens, of Fumitary compound.*

But as from this diviſion of the ſyrups you may perceive how theſe altering ſyrups are affected in the active qualities, ſo muſt you note alſo that all of them are drying in the paſſive qualities, unleſs ſuch that have the letter h. annexed, which moiſten and humect: but how they ſeverally are appropriated to divers parts and to concoct divers humors, you muſt find in the Materia medica.

A magiſterial ſyrup is that which is prepared for preſent uſe according to the various ſcope of the Phyſitian, compoſed of either more or fewer of the precedents.

The diviſion and differences of it are to be ſought from what I have before ſaid in the officinal ſyrup, and in the altering Apozem.

In it three things are to be conſidered, the compoſition, the Uſe, and the Utility.

In the COMPOSITION four things are to be regarded, the matter or Liquor of which it is made; the things to be diſſolved in it; the clarification and aromatization.

The matter is to be weighed both in *quality*, and *quantity*.

The conſideration of the matter is two-fold, *Remote, viz.* the ſeveral parts of ſimples ſpoken of in the Apozem, and *neer*, which is three-fold, *Decoction, Juyce*, and ſometimes *infuſion* prepared divers wayes of the aforeſaid ingredients, of which *I* muſt next treat.

1 The

1. The *decoction* of which the syrup is to be made is the same with the decoction of the altering Apozem, made and prescribed by the same reason, of the same things, & after the same manner and form, of which *I* shal say no more in this place.

2. The *Juyce* is drawn out of Leaves, Fruits, and flowers bruised and pressed, and so effectually purified, is used with better Fruit, and to more purpose than the decoction whether it be to strengthen or alter any way.

And this 3 several wayes is used in the making of a syrup.

1. Either it is taken merely, either of one only thing, or drawn from divers, and that either of Leaves, (as of *Borage*, *Bugloss*, *Hops* in melancholy people, of *Sorrel*, *Succory*, *Endive* in the cholerick, *&c.* and so in the rest according to the diversity of the directors:) or of Fruits, (as of *Limons* in the cholerick, of *Apples* in the Melancholy) and is exactly to be purified from the feces by a gentle heat, whereby they settle down at the bottom, else they may afford occasion of corruption.

2. Or else for the greater efficacy, or some other reason, arising from the indications, other things are boyled usually, three pound or four pound of the clarified Juyces is taken to prepare the syrup, and those things that are to be decocted in it (which must respect the part affected, or humor) are to be prescribed to half the quantity that is set down for an Apozem.

3. Or else more profitably specifical and proper ingredients are onely infused to the same intent, as Roots, Seeds, Flowers, Spices: and usually for the quantity of a pound and a half or two pound,

of

of a Juyce for a syrup are prescribed two ounces or 3 ounces of things to be infused, according to the several efficacy of the ingredients.

3. An *infusion* sometimes is taken or used for the liquid subject of a syrup, and is to be prepared of ingredients fit for the intention, of very forcible virtues, and for the most part are spices, (the reason of which you may find before in the purging Potion.)

In relation to the quantity, the usual proportion of a decoction, clarified Juyce, or infusion for a syrup is a pound, a pound and half, or 2 pound at most, according as we intend the use of it shal be more rare or frequent, or of shorter or longer continuance.

Things to be *dissolved* in the aforesaid syrups, either to preserve them the longer, or for tastes sake, are considered in relation to their

Quality, there is therefore dissolved in it, 1. either sugar, which is convenient for all, both hot and cold affections, and more acceptable to the sick; or sometimes Honey in cold affections of the head, and breast, or when you would more effectually heat, cut, cleanse, or when natural heat languishing is to be revived.

2. Or else together with the sugar some officinal syrup; but then the quantity of sugar is to be lessened, for a syrup is but sugar dissolved, & then sugar is only prescribed, q. s.

3. Besides some of the aforesaid sweetners that are perpetually dissolved in it, there are also dissolved (especially in that syrup that is prepared of a decoction, and sometimes in those prepared of infusions) some clarified Juyces of Leaves or Fruits, and other Liquors, as *Vinegar*, *Wine*

Wine, &c. to make them the more effectual, as is afore-ſaid in the altering Apozem, in which place ſee more.

In reſpect of the *quantity*: ſugar is diſſolved in equal proportion with the liquor; of this ſee in the animadverſions following: ſo alſo is Honey (when uſed,) in ſyrups to five ounces, or ſix ounces, but then ſugar to a ſufficient quantity only: Juyces to ſix ounces, more or leſs, according to the quantity of the infuſion or decoction.

Clarification and *Aromatization*, ſee of them before in the Apozem.

The USE and FORM of preſcribing.

In the uſe of a ſyrup either *officinal* or *Magiſterial* we muſt conſider three things methodically: after what maner, how much, & when they ought to be preſcribed and given.

1. How, or after what manner; that is, whether they are to be given in that form or conſiſtence, that they are of themſelves, or whether diluted with other Liquors, as in Juleps.

2. *How much*; that is in what *quantity*, or doſe.

3. When, that is, at what time; neither doth there appear more things neceſſary to be conſidered in the right and legitimate adminiſtration of them.

As to the *manner* of taking them; becauſe a ſyrup taken by it ſelf, not diluted with any Liquor, penetrates not ſo far into the body, neither can quickly or eaſily without loſing ſome ſtrength and virtues; and withal works ſlower upon the part affected, and humor that is to be altered; and on the contrary a ſyrup diluted in the form of a Julep doth ſooner, eaſier, & farther inſinuate it ſelf into the parts of the body, & noxious humours, (the clammineſs little hindring

it,) and can come to the most intimate spaces with firmer and less alter'd virtues, than when it is sincere, and doth sooner alter whatsoever it toucheth, so that according to the nearness and distance of the parts affected, the affections themselves, or causes that are to be alter'd, this or that form is chiefly to be used.

Therefore sincere syrups are prescribed commonly by themselves, and are taken

1. To intercept or stop defluxions by thickening them from falling violently either on the Throat, Lungs, or stomack, for by the help of their clamminess by reason of the stay they make in the mouth, and in regard they do not very soon pass down, they easily stay the humor that is descending, and these are to be taken out of a spoon, and to be held long in the mouth.

2. When there is a hoarseness of the throat, and a roughness of the Wind-pipe, which by its gentle clamminess (where with it (as it were) smears it) it helps, being swallowed by little and little, or licked down like lohochs.

3. For expectoration, or the spitting up of matter, collected and impacted in the Lungs, by taking it by little and little out of a spoon, or licking it down from a Liquorice stick.

4. To mitigate coughing after the same manner.

5. In diseases and affections of the stomack, especially cold ones, (for they which are hot and dry, as in hot and cholerick affections, should rather be temper'd by moisture, unless its strength be much decayed) although usually they are dissolved in a smal quantity of Liquor (except syrup of Wormwood) or when your scope be to strengthen or bind. 6.

6. In the affections of parts nigh the stomack, to which it may easily be conveyed.

But diluted or dissolved syrup in the form of a Julep is best,

1. When the Liver, Spleen, or Mesentory are affected.

2. When the head, heart, Lungs, Reins, Bladder, Womb, habit of the body, & Limbs are diseased, to which the virtue of a syrup could either not at al, or very slowly, and much alter'd from its own nature, otherwise have entrance.

'Tis to be prescribed to be dissolved in a fit, and appropriat Liquor, that may either respect the humor, affection, or part affected, or al these together: but most usually in some distill'd waters, or with a proper decoction which is much more effectual than water, or with the broth of a chick, and that either simple or alter'd, with Roots, Leaves, &c. agreeing to the same purpose, as hereafter.

The *quantity* is to be considered, as singular and several.

As to the singular or united quantity or dose, an officinal altering Syrup may be given from half an ounce to an ounce, an ounce and half, and two ounces at the most, in defining which dose more exactly four things are to be diligently regarded.

1. The scituation, or distance of the part affected, for when the virtue of the syrup is to be conveighed to parts far scituated and remote, it ought to be given in the greater quantity, yea in the highest dose of all if you see it fit; otherwise you wil hardly perceive any benefit in the operation, because in a long passage its virtues must needs

needs be much broken and alter'd; unless the Liquor in which it is dissolved be also very effectual.

2. The action or motion of the affection it self, and the morbifical causes, and the quality of them, either vehement or remiss, that requires a middle, or else the highest dose; this a lesser.

3. The Age: as to Infants half an ounce, which is the least dose; to Boyes of better growth one ounce, which is next the least, will suffice for the highest of al.

4. The efficacy of the syrup it self, and the vigor it hath naturally to operate; hence 'twil suffice to prescribe *Syrup of Poppy*, only from half an ounce to an onnce at highest, because of his narcotick quality; so also unpleasantness ought to lessen the dose, as usually one ounce doth suffice for the highest dose of *Syrup of Wormwood.*

5. To these may be added the manner of taking it; for that which is taken to be swallowed down by licking it leisurely, because they cannot be taken in a large quantity, against divers affections of the Wind-pipe and Lungs, for then it would soon slip down without doing any good, therefore it is often to be iterated, and is alwayes prescribed to four ounces, or 5, or 6, for frequent use to be often repeated; so that such ought not to be included within the aforesaid rule; the same is to be said for such as are prescribed to quench thirst in the heat of diseases, because the use of them is to be frequent, for which purpose they are prescribed to four ounces, five, or six;

The

But the quantity of the Liquor, to dilute them in, is much like that of the Juleps, as to three ounces, or four ounces: yet you may preſcribe leſs when the ſtomack or any neer part is affected: but more to allay thirſt, as in *Fevers*, and al ſorts of hot, boyling diſeaſes, eſpecially in the ſummer time.

As to the ſeveral or divided quantity, digeſtives may be taken morning and evening when the ſtomack is empty: but they which are given againſt thirſt, coughs, or to help ſpitting, are taken often; they which provoke ſleep only once, and that about the accuſtomed hour of ſleeping, neither are they to be reiterated unleſs neceſſity require it; others are taken either oftner or ſeldomer, as the ſeveral occaſions require.

As to the *Time* of taking them, preparing Syrups, and thoſe which are allotted for the digeſtion of humors, are to be taken in the morning 4 or five hours before meat, leſt the virtue of them ſhould be ſlackned either by meat newly taken, or not yet concocted: they may alſo be taken at evening when the digeſtion of humors is to be accelerated, but at a good diſtance from feeding when the ſtomack is empty: thoſe for a cough, at any hour when it is troubleſom: they which provoke ſleep, or are to ſtop defluxions, are beſt taken at the time of going to ſleep: theſe to expectorate, in the morning; thoſe to quench thirſt, when they are dry; any others, as neer as may be when the ſtomack is empty.

As to the magiſterial ſyrup, the uſe of it is either by it ſelf, or elſe diluted with ſome fit water, or other Liquor, ſimple or compound broth; and is taken after the ſame rules as the officinal.

And this is the USUAL FORM of PRESCRIBING.

1. If it be made of a decoction. R. &c. *viz:* (the ingredients of an altering Apozem) make a decoction in &c. take of the strained Liquor, &c. in which dissolve, &c. make a syrup wel boyled, clarified, and aromatized with &c. keep it in a glass safe; let him take of it one ounce, an ounce and half, or two ounces by it self, or with, &c. at such an hour, so often in a day, &c. see more above.

2. If of a Juyce without any other mixture; R, of the Juyce of such a thing bruised, newly pressed out, & wel clarified, &c. in which dissolve, &c. So make a syrup.

3. If of a Juyce in which other things are boyled or infused, R of the Juyce (newly pressed out and clarified) of &c. in which dissolve &c. So make a Syrup.

4. If of an infusion, R &c. let them be infused in, &c. of such a Liquor, take of the liquor strained, and gently pressed out, &c. dissolve, &c.

The Utility of a syrup in general is sufficiently declared above, whether officinal or magistrial; for it is instituted to conserve divers virtues of plants, with which decoctions, Juyces expressed, and infusions prepared of them are plentifully fraught, that they may be the readier at hand, and fit for use without loss of their natural efficacy.

The officinal also more specially serves for the making up of divers forms of Medicines: so is it added to Apozems, Julcps, and Potions, for tast sake, and also to add to their virtues; so also is it taken to make up opiats, pils, preserves, Lohochs

Tro

Troſciſchs into a convenient form or conſiſtence, and for the uniting of a compound Medicine, and preſerving of it.

But the magiſterial ſyrup as of old, ſo at this day, and hath been chiefly in requeſt of late to prepare both humors, and the body; and is very neceſſary to precede a proſperous purgation (of which ſee in the altering Apozem,) and is very uſeful alſo to alter the body, or parts of it, divers ways, both by correcting the diſtempers of them, and tempering the peccant humours: of this ſee alſo in the altering Apozem.

In ſumm, againſt al internal affections or cauſes, that ingender them: and to alter and ſtrengthen the parts afflicted by them, any proper and ſpecifical Medicines, ſuggeſted by the *indicantia* (or things from whence you take directions what is to be done) may be reduced into the form of a Syrup; ſo that the utility of it is of large extent againſt any affections, dropſie, plague, &c. but 'tis fitteſt to be preſcribed, when you would continue your altering for ſome time, or muſt cheriſh the ſtrength continually: (when otherwiſe that labor muſt be fain to be renued often; with the trouble of a new preſcription of ſome Apozem, Julep, or potion:) hence it is moſt profitable in long diſeaſes and affections, and chronical diſtempers of the parts which have taken ſuch rooting that there muſt be a continual alteration to remedy them; yet becauſe ſome uſual ſyrup is to be had, that hath the ſame virtue, unleſs you think its virtue leſs effectual, or decayed, or that it conſiſts not of thoſe things which your ſpecifical indications require, or that you hope to compoſe one more powerful; preſcribe them but ſeldom.

A Purging Syrup.

YOu must seek the definition and division of a purging syrup according to the variety of the humors, in the chapter of the Apozem.

A Syrup is two-fold, officinal and Magisterial.

The officinal is here chiefly divided both in respect of the composition, & the chiefest of their virtues, as you may see in the following table.

The officinal purging syrup is compounded either of

- A juyce, and purgeth Melancholy, as *Syrup of Fumitory compound*,
- *A decoction made* — *Water*, & purgeth — Melancholy, as *Syrup de Epithymo*.
- *A decoction made* — *Water*, & purgeth — Choler, as *of Succory compound*
- *A decoction made* — *Water*, & purgeth — Mixt humours, as *Diasereat*,
- *A juyce*, & purgeth. — Melancholy, as *Syrup de Pomis Regis Sabor.*
- *Infusion in* — *Water*, & purgeth — Choler — *As Syrup of Roses solut: Syrup of Violets, each made with 9 infusions, Syrup of Peach flow:*
- *Infusion in* — *Water*, & purgeth — Phlegm — *As Honey of Roses strained.*

The definition and division of a magisterial purging syrup may appear out of what is aforesaid.

In it three things are to be considered; Composition, Use, and Utility.

In the Compoſition four things.

1. The matter whereby 'tis made purgative.

2 The things that are to be diſſolved in it.

3. Clarification.

4. Aromatization.

The *matter* of which 'tis made, is either *remote*, and this in regard of its *quality*, are the purging ſimples with their correctives, either boyled or infuſed; or *neer*, and thus the matter is two-fold, either a purging decoction, or a purging infuſion.

A *purging Decoction* is nothing elſe then the decoction of a purging Apozem, made of the ſame things both alterers and purgers, varied according to the intention of the Phyſitian, to be preſcribed after the ſame manner and order, and upon the ſame conditions, as is before ſpecified.

This only is to be marked, concerning the doſe of purging Medicines, that the *Montpelier* Phyſitians for a ſyrup do uſually double the quantities of purgers preſcribed for Apozems; but 'twil ſuffice if you take onely the ſame quantity; or if I might perſwade you, the double quantity: it matters not if it be the treble, for ſo it wil be contracted into the leſſer doſe, and be taken with the leſs nauſeouſneſs to the patient, ſo that you exactly finde out the true doſe, and not meaſure it according to the uſual proportion; ſee the uſe.

It is alſo to be noted, that when fir juyces are to be uſed, the purgers may be boyled in 4 ounces, or 5, or 6, with their correctors.

How a *purging infuſion* is to be prepared, is ſaid before in a purging potion, and from thence eaſie to be collected; but how to prefer'd before a decoction, ſee in the animadverſions.

Things that are to be diſſolved in the decoction or infuſion, are alſo conſidered in *quality* and *quantity*.

Concerning the *quality*, there is diſſolved either ſugar, or ſometimes Honey; or elſe together with the ſugar ſome officinal ſyrup, and that either altering or purging.

Beſides thoſe ſweetners that are perpetually diſſolved for its preſervation, there are frequently to the aforeſaid purpoſe diſſolved,

1. Some fit Juyce, and that either altering, as of *Leaves*, *Fruits*, *&c.* according to the indication; ſee in the Apozem; or purging, as the *juyce of Roſes*, eſpecially in the Spring time, againſt choler; of *Fumitory* or *Hops* for Melancholy.

2. The compleat infuſion of Damask Roſes, eſpecially in the ſpring time, when 'tis to be had, and moſt effectual.

3. Sometimes the infuſion of *Rhenbarb* (if the indication require it) made by it ſelf, and added at the latter end; otherwiſe ſhould it be added in the beginning before the ſyrup come to a conſiſtence, its virtue may exhale by long boyling.

In an infuſion the ſame thing is to be obſerved, except concerning the aforeſaid Juyces, which 'tis beſt to preſcribe in the beginning.

In relation to the quantity, ſugar or Honey are to be added in the ſame quantity with the ſtrained Liquor, which for the moſt part is to be preſcribed to a pound, or a pound and a half; this one thing is alſo to be obſerved, that the quantity

of

of sugar or Honey is exactly to be set down, (contrary to that custom which Physitians vulgarly use) and not to be left to the pleasure of the Apothecaryes; otherwise you can never be certain of the exact dose, which is one, where there is but a little sugar; another, where there is much This makes practicers stammer when a dose of a purge prescribed by themselves is to be defined: then they admonish you to begin with a less dose, so proceeding til you have found the true quantity without error.

If a Syrup be added, 'tis for the most part to 5, six, or eight ounces: and because this is accounted of as sugar, 'twil be easie to finde out the right quantity, making an abatement for the quantity of syrup: but it matters not whether it be altering or purging, so that you use this way to find out its right proportion in your computation.

Juyces may be added to six ounces or eight ounces; only be mindful of the purgers in appointing the dose.

See CLARIFICATION and AROMATIZATION before in the Apozem.

The USE and form of PRESCRIBING: in the use of a purging syrup whether officinal or Magisterial, three things should be briefly considered; *how* 'tis to be prescribed and ought to be given, *in what quantity, and at what time.*

As to the manner of giving an officinal syrup, 'tis either by it self out of a spoon, or else diluted: the former way is rare; for every one of them use to be dissolved, and that in a fit Liquor, as aforesaid.

As to the dose, in general, this may be appointed, *viz.* from one ounce, to two ounces, three ounces, and four ounces, which is to be the highest; yet *Syrup of Fumitory* and *de Epithymo* may be given to five ounces, or six ounces; in the mean time comparing other circumstances, which *I* have said should limit the dose of purgers in the purging Apozem.

The time of giving it is the same as of other purgers, *viz.* in the morning, the stomack being empty, lest the virtue of them should be dull'd, or their operation by the meat or *chile* be much retarded.

The magisterial syrup (*as to the manner*) is used either by it self, out of a spoon, or (which is most usual) dissolved in some fit liquor, as above.

As to *the quantity*, and that the continued, or united, they usually but very ill define it from two ounces to three ounces: they may truly look into the quantity of the Cathartick, but 'tis but cursorily; and perhaps in the mean time are ignorant of what quantity of sugar the Apothecary hath made it up with al; hence is it that they are uncertain concerning the dose; *I* for my part conceive it may be half an ounce, an ounce, an ounce and half, two ounces, three ounces, 5, 6, according as the Liquor with which the sugar is boyled into a syrup, is impregnated with the more copious or violent purgers: but thus it is, the doses of the purging decoctions, infusions, things dissolved, &c. are to be accounted, for how many times they may serve to purge withal, considering them all together. As for example, suppose them to suffice for eight times, and to one pound of Liquor; impregnated with the virtues of those purgers you may

may add one pound of pure Sugar, and boyl it to a Syrup. If you ſhal divide thoſe twelve ounces into eight parts, (for there are eight purging doſes,) there wil be an ounce and half for one doſe: and if you add only eight ounces of ſugar to make it to a ſyrup, there wil be one ounce more for every doſe: &c.

As to the divided quantity, it is uſualy given once or twice a moneth in chronical diſeaſes; and ſo that filth that is uſually gathered is gently taken away, that it cannot arrive at a quantity ſufficient to breed a diſeaſe.

But the time of taking it is fitteſt in the morning, as before.

The UTILITY is great in chronical diſeaſes, in which there is need of a continual precaution, or a gentle evacuation to be frequently renewed; leſt otherwiſe, excrementitious humours that are apt to breed divers affections ſhould be heaped together in ſuch diſtemper'd bodies, and ill-affected bowels, which are by this means oppoſed; and an occaſion of future affections quite taken away.

ANIMADVERSIONS of SYRUPS.

CConcerning the quantity of Sugar for Syrups, 'tis much diſputed on, ſo that you wil hardly find any precept abſolute, and agreeable to the nature of every thing: Meſues *that Author of the Art is varying, for he preſcribes in cold Syrups, eſpecially of juyces, to one pound of liquor eight ounces of ſugar; as* in ſyrup of Verjuyce, *ſo that the Liquor is more than the ſugar by a third part: in other places he preſcribes the* Liquor *to double the quantity of Sugar:* as in Syrup de Ponnis Sabor; *ſometimes to*

tre-

treble it, as in the syrup of sowr Prunes, and that which is most wonderful, sometimes to be six times more then the sugar, as in the sowr syrup of Quinces: sometimes that the sugar should double the Liquor, so that to six ounces of Liquor, he prescribes one pound of sugar; sometimes to eight ounces of Liquor twelve ounces of sugar; sometimes he prescribes a like quantities of Liquor and sugar; but most commonly Mesues prescribes in hot syrups both of Sugar and Liquor, a like quantities, or a little more or less, &c.

Modern Writers do much wrangle among themselves: sometimes they appoint according to the rule of Syrups a like proportion both of Sugar and liquor, sometimes more of the Sugar, or more of the Liquor, Silvius, Fernelius, Joubertus, and Rondeletius, chief Writers of this Art, prescribe several quantities.

In Syrups made of Juyces, the Liquor generally exceeds the sugar: but in particular, for one pound of the Liquor they sometimes put seven ounces, seven ounces and a half, eight, eight ounces and a half, nine, or of each a like quantity, as the nature of each particular Juyce requires.

In syrups made of infusions they every where put of the infusion and sugar, ana; but in syrups made of decoctions, sometimes of each alike, or (as it is most commonly) they let the Liquor exceed the sugar by one third.

The thing seems indifferent to me, onely the nature of the syrup is somewhat more exactly to be weighed; in which two things are chiefly to be considered. viz: 1. The sugar (or sometimes Honey) which is only as the subject to receive the essence of the simples, and preserve their virtues. 2. That virtue or essence, consisting in the Juyce, Infusion, or Decoction, from whence the

syrup

Syrup hath his force or energie, as the conſervation of that eſſence from the ſugar; the Syrup being compoſed by the union of both, through the evaporation of the ſuperfluous humidity.

Now every one knows that if you diſſolve one pound of Sugar in any quantity of Liquor, it may eaſily be boyled to the conſiſtence of a Syrup; that is alſo apparent, and approved to them that know the making of extracts, that the Liquor in which the eſſence was diffuſed, and with which it was drawn forth (which is correſpondent to the Juyces,) whether it be 2, 3, 6, or 8 pound, &c. may be wholly evaporated, ſet in Balneo, *or over aſhes, the eſſence by little and little taking what conſiſtence you wil either of a Syrup, or ſome ſolider form; why therefore need they trouble themſelves about the proportion of either in vain, ſeeing they may reduce any of the aforeſaid proportions to the form of a Syrup: for if the things compounding the Syrup: (viz: Sugar, Juyces, Decoctions, Infuſions, &c. whatſoever be their quantity) can be boyled to that ordinary conſiſtence, by conſuming the watriſh parts, what matter is it in what quantity they are joyned. If* Joubertus *and* Silvius *boyl three pound of Liquor with one pound of Sugar to the height of a Syrup; why may it not be done with the like proportion of your Medicinal liquor, whether Juyce, Infuſion, or* Decoction; *and on the contrary, if to three pound of Sugar you add only* 1 *pound of the Liquor,* as Rondeletius in his Syrup of Limons, *why may not this be done alſo; therefore in appointing the quantity of ſugar for a Syrup, we muſt not ſo much regard the quantity as the force of it, and intention or purpoſe of the Phyſitian,* as for example: *Suppoſe that one pound of ſimples decocted or infuſed have imparted three ounces or four ounces*

of

of virtuous essence to four pound, or five of the Liquor of the decoction or infusion strained, if you prescribe of that Liquor and Sugar, ana, one pound, as we usally do for a syrup, 'twil truly make a syrup, but of little efficacy; and in a pound of which there will be contained onely a dram of essence; so that each ounce wil contain but v.gr. but if the aforesaid half ounce of essence be diffused only in two pound of Liquor, and you prescribe one pound of syrup to be made of that & Sugar, ana, you wil have a syrup, and that effectual, in which pound are contained two drams of the essence, and in an ounce of which remains half a scruple of essence: but if you boyl those two pounds of Liquor in which four drams of essence is contained with one pound of sugar onely, you wil have a most effectual syrup, in which is contained three drams, or half an ounce of essence, and in an ounce of which is one scruple: but if you yet desire it more effectual, take to those two pound of Liquor but half a pound of Sugar, and you have also in this three drams, or half an ounce of essence; and in every ounce of it wil be half a dram, or two scruples of essence.

Therefore we must not so much look on the quantity of the Liquor, as on the virtue and essence wherewith it is fraught; or from what quantity of matter it is extracted. Lastly, what weight of Liquor soever you boyl it in, whether a pound, two pound, or three, &c. this is to be chiefly marked, (that you may be the more certain of the efficacy of your syrup, and may prescribe it weaker or stronger as shall be for your purpose) that you should see to the virtues and efficacy of it rather then to the quantity of Liquor you prescribe; therefore 'tis best to follow the common rule, where they usually prescribe the Liquor and Sugar in equal parts, that you may have some knowledg of its operation.

CHAP.

Chap. V.

Of Vomitories.

THe excrementitious humors, whether natural exceeding in quantity, or preternatural in any quantity, either mixed with the blood in the veins, or residing elsewhere, are apt to breed an ill habit, and therefore require an evacuation, chiefly that way they naturally tend, by conducing places or veins for their expulsion, whether by purging (either particular or universal) Urine, Sweat, insensible transpiration, or Vomit.

And although Medicines which perform either of these may in general be called purgers, yet particularly they are counted so which draw forth the excrements of the body by stool and vomiting: and of these those which by stool evacuate, are significantly called purgers; those which expel things upwards, Vomitories.

A Vomitory is not so much a name of the liquid form of a Medicine as of the faculty of it, taking its name from the operation; yet it usually signifies both, *viz.* the Medicine procuring that motion or evacuation of the humors upwards, and also the form in which it is prescribed; of which my intention is here to write.

A VOMITORY therefore is a liquid form of a remedy prepared of a simple emeti-

cal

cal Medicine, boyled, infused, or dissolved in some Liquor, evacuating & expelling perforce by the mouth any thing hurtful to the Stomack, and superfluities either of meat, or excrementitious humors from it and the adjacent parts.

This from its effect may be said three-fold, evacuating, revelling, and deriving.

But from the manner of working one may be termed *gentle*, correspondent to the mollifying and lenitive purger, working more by its quantity; another *moderate*, which operates by its quality; another *violent*, answerable to those purgers properly called Cathartick's, provoking this motion by a specifical and internal virtue.

Vomitoryes are simple, or compound.

The more SIMPLE consists of fair water warmed, drank suddenly to a pint or better; warmed Barley water in a good quantity; the fat broth of flesh drank plentifully, Mead plentifully taken, which *Galen* prescribed; any sort of drink drank suddenly and liberally; *Hydrœleum*, *i: e.* water and oyl, to eight ounces or ten, common oyl to four ounces or six drank warm, and melted butter.

The which and such like other gentle vomits (improperly so called) we use chiefly, when those things that are to be voided this way, (whether things taken down, or divers sorts of impurities, and vitious humours contained in the stomack,) are so ready for evacuation, that upon every little occasion, without much trouble they may be expell'd whether nature be inclin'd to it or not, or whether she strive to shake off such a burthen nimbly enough or not, or be not sufficient of her self, then with these gentler sort do we give occa-

sion

sion of such a motion to the excretive faculty, if it be dul, and as it were shew her the way: or else if she moves but unperfectly, we render her endeavour the more easie by these means; which we often do also (without giving a vomit) by thrusting the finger down the throat, or a feather dipt in oyl. But those which work only by their quantity, and move the excretive faculty by their warm moisture & fatness, are not profitable when that that is to be vomited up, either is not in the stomack, but in the adjacent parts; or else are contained in the more remote parts; or if in it, are fixed in the tunicles of it; or are not prepared; so that they cannot be shaken out without a greater and more violent motion; for then 'tis better to use the compounds.

In the COMPOUND Vomitory two things are to be considered, 1. The *matter* of which 'tis made. 2. *The things to be dissolved* in it.

The MATTER of a Vomitory is two-fold, *Liquid* and *solid*.

The *liquid matter* (or liquor) with which *I* defined a Vomitory, and which is for the most part used, either provokes vomit, or doth not provoke it.

That Liquor which doth provoke vomit is either a *decoction* or an *infusion*, or sometimes water, or a distilled *Liquor*.

As to the VOMITING DECOCTION, in it three things are to be regarded 1. *The matter* or *ingredients* whereby it becomes a vomitory. 2. *The Liquor* in which these things are boyled.

In either of these we must see to the quality and quantity.

The

The matter or ingredients, as to their quality are diverse parts of vomitive simples; and those moderate (for the strongest sort seldom are put into decoctions) as *Roots*, *Barks*, *Leaves*, and sometimes Seeds and Flowers, of which 2, 3, or four should be prescribed together.

As to their *quantity*, those moderate vomitories are prescribed almost as those of Potions; that is, that they make in all one ounce, two ounces, or three ounces at most; but particularly, if one or 2 of these following be added with others, or should be prescribed of themselves, it should usually be in these following doses.

The root of *Asarum* to one dram, two drams, or three drams.

The middle Bark of a *Walnut-Tree*, to 1 dram, or two drams.

The roots of *Pompions* dryed to two drams, and half an ounce.

The flowers of *Broom* to two drams, or three drams, or so many pugils.

As to the *quality* of the *Liquor* in which they are boyled, you may take very commodiously *fair water*, or (where the humors are also to be cleansed from the stomack) *Barly water*; or some decoction (where they be dry, sharp, and hot,) or Mead, (where gross clammy humors are to be attenuated, cut, and cleansed;) or *Oxymel* made with water in either case, or fat and lenifying broth where the acrimony is to be temper'd, whether it be of the humors or poysons taken, or of sharp violent vomits, so also water and oyl in the aforesaid case; which are therefore chiefly convenient, because they are reckoned among the gentler vomitories.

The

The *quantity* of the liquor is usually left to the judgment of the Apothecary; yet you may prescribe it having regard to what is said before in the Apozem and potion; only observe, that because for the most part they take eight ounces of Liquor for a vomiting potion, those moderate vomitories should be prescribed to double the quantity.

A *Vomiting Infusion* in relation to the *quality* of the things to be infused is most commonly prepared of the strongest sort of vomitories, which are more rightly infused then given in substance or decoction; as those two most famous for their vehemency in working, *white Hellebor* of the Antients, and *Antimony* of modern practicers; and although to the same purpose we may take also the moderate vomitories, as *Asarum*, *Radishes*, *Pompion roots dryed*, the middle bark of *Walnuts*, &c. yet because there cometh no danger from them, either given in substance, or decoction, they are to be prescribed onely in decoction; but in these stronger 'tis better only to give the infusion, which communicates onely its spiritual virtue without any quantity of the substance, which might make the operation last the longer, or irritate the excretive faculty too much.

Therefore two things chiefly serve to prepare an infusion of *white Hellebor* otold most famous, not only in rebellious and desperate affections, but also in the sleighter sort; but now scarcely used in the greatest, and then with caution, which being prudently had, you may infuse it from half a dram to one dram, and a dram and half in broth, adding withal one scruple of Cordials for correctors.

In the place of this you may give an Apple made hollow a little, then filled with the root of white *Hellebore* and roasted; afterwards the *Hellebor* being taken out give it to eat. So also the root of a Radish stuck thorow with slices of it, then roasted and eaten.

But in the place of *Hellebor* (as it is now generally used) take *Antimony*, the other growing out of date; neither let it trouble you that it hath hitherto been rejected by the unexperienc'd; for 'tis far safer than the other, and finisheth its operation without any manner of suffocation, convulsion, or danger of other vehement symptomes: to the same purpose some use *Antimony crude*, some its *Vitrum*, and some the *regulus* of it: but 'tis better to chuse that preparation of *Antimony* which they cal *Crocus Metallorum*, because so prepared 'tis spoiled of its fetid sulfur, which otherwise may be the cause of great symptoms.

To the same end take *Antimony* so prepared, to 1 scruple, or half a dram; [or rather half a scruple, or *gr.* 12.] infuse it in three ounces, or 4 ounces of white Wine over hot embers, strain the liquor thorow a brown paper, and give it.

Of the same *Crocus* is made that water commonly called *Aqua benedicta*; instead of the aforesaid *Crocus* you may infuse the *vitrum* to one scruple, [or rather to *gr.* 12.] in any fit Liquor.

As to the *quantity* of the things to be infused, what is said before wil serve for these stronger; if you would use them which are moderate, you may prescribe

The root of Asarum from one dram and a half to three drams, and half an ounce.

The roots of *Pompion* dryed from one dram to three drams.

Nettle seed, from one dram to half an ounce.

The bark of *Walnut* to 3 drams, and half an ounce.

But 'tis better to use the Antimony before spoken of.

As to the DISTILLED *Liquor* it is seldom prescribed by a Physitian, except *distilled Vinegar* of late by the vulgar brought into Physical use, which being most violent in workings is to be used with caution, and that in strong people only: and it is prescribed two wayes; either distill'd alone out of a leaden stil, or else as it is in use by the Women of *Montpelier*, they take a Loaf hot out of the Oven, infuse it in two or three pound of Vinegar, and so distil it; the use of this Liquor as also of the former is, to give three ounces or four ounces in Fevers, and chiefly Agues that are of long continuance, either before or in the very fit. *Hitherto of the vomiting Liquor.*

The *liquor that is not vomiting* is also used commonly without the infusion or decoction of any simple vomitory made in it, in which after is dissolved either things helping to vomit, or preparing only for a gentler vomit, or some simple vomiting powder in the manner of a julep.

But for the quality see that before in the quality of the liquor for a vomitory decoction.

In relation to the quantity, it should be prescribed to 8 or ten ounces.

Thus far of the liquid matter of vomitories of which (as we have said) now they are only composed, and which before I defined a vomitory, as that which was the received form to give them in.

They may also be given in a form that is not fluid, viz. of powder, bole, &c. some of your vomitories being powdered and incorporated with a conserve. (So modern Authors prescribe *vitrum antimonii*, *crocus metallorum*, & *Mercurius vitæ*.) which thing may also be done with other vomitories which work in a greater quantity, (as *Asarum*, the root of Pompion, &c. (except *Helebor*, which is not to be given in substance, but its purging virtue to be drawn out by infusion: but a liquid form seems more commodious, because by its moisture the stomack is wet and relaxed, that those things which are to be voided may be erected with the greater ease, and more readily, because all things in the stomack are as it were washed out, and cannot cleave to as otherwise they would; as also because the stomack is filled, and thereby the readier to empty; otherwise the whole bottom must be as it were inverted, and turned up to the mouth of it before it could expel them. But as it is, if you desire to use that solid form, you may by taking some of the following powders either of it self in a spoon moistening it with a little liquor, or by mixing it with some fit conserves, to two drams, or three drams, in the form of a bole; and thus the usual things shal be prescribed,

Root of Asarum, from one dram to four scruples.

Pompion root dryed, from two scruples to one dram.

Nettle seed, from half a dram to a dram.

Radish seed, from three drams to half an ounce.

Bark of Walnuts to one dram.

But if you take the vomitories of Minerals, used by late practisers, you may take

Of

Of *Vitrum Antimonii* to grains six and eight to the strongest sort.

Crocus metallorum to grains six or eight.

Salt of Vitriol to one scruple, or half a dram.

Roman vitriol or white vitriol prepared, from half a scruple to 1 scruple.

THINGS *to be dissolved*, are either not used when you intend to move it gently, and only to give occasion of motion to the excretive faculty, as above; or when the Liquor is sufficiently vomitory; but chiefly if that that is to be voided upwards, be readily prepared; if otherwise, divers things are dissolved in the said liquor, which may be reckoned two-fold, *Vomitories*, and not *Vomitories*.

The *not vomitories* are often and usual in a vomitive decoction, and also in a Liquor that is not vomitive; in relation to their *quality*, they are to a three-fold end, *viz.* for the *stirring* up of the excretive faculty; for the *preparation* of the humor to be voided; and the *correction* of the symptoms, which may arise either from the humour, or vomitory.

For *some* are oyly and fatty, which move vomit by overthrowing the strength of the stomack, and give occasion to the excretive faculty, though irritated when it moves but slowly; and therefore are only used in the sleighter sort of Vomits when the stomack is apt to vomit, else not so fit; they are also useful for the quelling the sharpness of humors, or other things taken down, and poysons, such are *common Oyl, Linseed Oyl*, and *Butter*.

Other things are used to bridle the violence of the cholerick gnawing humors, as *Vinegar, Oxymel simple, Syrup of Vinegar*.

Others (and this is the chief end of things to be dissolved) respect the preparation of the humor that is to be voided, and are either cleansers when vitious humors are to be loosened from the stomack, or when they are slimy, clammy, and stick fast (as is usually phlegme;) these are *Oxymel simple*, *Oxymel of Squils*, *Sugar*, *Honey*; you may also note that some do (much amiss) reckon among the vomitories, (contrary to experience) *Oxymel*, and *Syrup of Vinegar*; when we see Vinegar it self (either smelt to or taken down) from whom the former have their energie doth bind, and that eruptions of blood, fluxes of the belly, and vomitings are stayed by it; so that they can only be used to prepare the humors that they may the more easily be voided.

In relation to the *quantity*, they should be prescribed from one ouuce to an ounce and half, or two ounces, but these are not wont to be dissolved in a vomitory made by infusion, or of other distill'd Liquor, because a preparation ought to precede the use of them, and because that Liquor of Vinegar serves wel enough to the same purpose, yet 'twil be no great error if you do dissolve them in it.

But *Vomitories* that are to be dissolved are best used when the Liquor it self is no way vomitive, and are some of the foresaid, in the same dose there set down.

The USE: in it three things are to be considered, after *what manner*, *how much*, and *when*.

As to the manner, as Vomitories should be usually liquid, so should they also be taken warm; for so they the easier make a nauseousnes, and stir the excretive faculty; but if they are given in form

form of a bole, they are to be taken as boles are wont: but 'twil be convenient to give some Liquor warmed half an hour, or an hour after, to make the vomiting easier.

As to the *quantity* or dose, a simple vomitory may be rightly given to one pound in them of ripe age, for so the excretive faculty of the stomack is more oppressed.

A Compound, of a decoction and that moderate to eight ounces or ten. The dose of an infusion (as also of a vomitive Liquor) is before noted, the proportion also of a Liquor not vomitive, to 8 ounces, or ten ounces.

As to the time *when*; in chronical diseases they may rightly be taken in the morning, the stomack being empty, like other purgers, especially if the humours that breed the nauseousnes are thin: but when on the contrary they are tough, gross and clammy, if you take them after meat, they wil work the sooner and the easier: In periodical diseases, and intermitting Agues, as the fit begins; because we see nature ordinarily indeavour this way of evacuation at that time of her own accord. Yet take them at any time when poyson, or any hurtful thing hath been taken down into the stomack.

And this shal be the FORM of *Prescribing*.

1. If of a Decoction, ℞ &c. make a decoction in, &c. q. s. take of the straining, &c. make a vomitory to be taken warm at such an hour; and if he do not vomit a little after, let him provoke a vomit by his finger thrust down his throat: if you would dissolve some things in it, you may add, take of the straining, &c. in which dissolve, &c.

2. *If* of an infuſion, Rx *&c.* Make an infuſion in, *&c.* let them be ſtrained and filtrated thorow a brown paper (becauſe an infuſion for the moſt part conſiſts of the ſtrongeſt ſort; if you ſhould be content with only ſtraining it, there were fear that ſome of the groſs ſubſtance might paſs thorow with the liquor, which ſticking long in the tunicles of the ſtomack might too long provoke vomiting, and trouble the patient;) ſo make a vomitory,

3. If of a diſtilled liquor. Rx. of ſuch a liquor *&c.* let him drink it, and a little after let him vomit.

4. If of a liquor that is not vomitive, Rx. *&c.* in which diſſolve, *&c.* Make a vomitory.

5. If in a ſolider forme, as of a bole, Rx, of the powder *&c.* mingle it with ſuch a conſerve, which let him take as a bole; a little after let him vomit: but if in the form of a powder, Rx *&c.* let him take it in a ſpoon in a fit liquor.

The UTILITY: vomiting and vomitories were uſed by the Antients both to prevent diſeaſes, and alſo to cure them; for with them it was uſuall (for health ſake) to vomit every moneth, as may be obſerved out of *Hipocrates*; and for this reaſon they did the more eaſily bear vomitories through cuſtom.

But at this day they are only uſed for the cure of diſeaſes; and they are very few which in a ſound condition wil uſe them to prevent diſeaſes, unleſs ſuch as are much given to intemperance: neither in our age wil they give them indifferently in any diſeaſes, but in thoſe which are rebellious and chronical.

But

But the utility of a vomitory is either particular, respecting the stomack, or universal, regarding the whole region, or some other part of it, *deriving* the offending humors of them; or if it flow from some other place to them, *withdrawing* it; so that the motion of nature, and inclination of the humor, together with the verge of the places, and parts wherein it stayes, and whereinto it fals, and the waves by which they are to be derived or withdrawn be naturally dispos'd thereto, and have some proximity and communion with the stomack by free passages by which they may communicate: so that a vomit is in general an emptying or purging remedy, as wel particularly of the stomack, as otherwise universally for derivation and revulsion.

But it evacuates in special, 1 The stomack, from all excrementitious humours both cholerick and Phlegmatick, either thin, gross, & clammy, gathered by the imbecillity of that it self, or sent thither from the whole Body, Head, Bowels, or Veins; which a vomit doth clearly exclude whether they fluctuate in the cavity, or are impacted in the tunicles of it.

Hence it is profitable in the proper affections of the stomack, especially want of apetite, nauseousness, frequent vomitings, paines of the stomack, and heart-burning, *&c* and also for those diseases of other parts, contracted by their sympathizing with it; for the very fountain from whence they sprang being exhausted, they also must needs vanish: for this it was that *Galen* said, it helped the affections of the *Pericranium*, and also the *Falling-Sickness*, *Megrim*, *Suffusions*, and all

all other affections of the head, ingendred by ſympathy with the ſtomack, either by reaſon of the morbifical humors tranſlation to the part affected, or the exhalation of ſome vapour ariſing from the filth contained in the ſtomack: it alſo ſuddenly relieves the ſtomack, & frees it from the hurt might ariſe by things taken down, either meat or drink, ſo much in quantity, or of an ill quality; alſo from Surfettings, crudities, and poyſons.

Furthermore, according to *Galen*, it cleanſeth the firſt region of the body from a various impurity, and purgeth forth the filth from the hollow part of the Liver, the *Spleen*, Pancreas, Meſentery, and other parts adjacent to the ſtomack: and as he himſelf hath noted, it excludes that at once which any other vehement purger cannot eradicate at divers times; and for this reaſon contumacious diſeaſes of thoſe parts have been healed miraculouſly by it; for from thoſe parts to the ſtomack the paſſages are ſhort and expedite, therefore it is profitable in the proper affections of thoſe parts, as *Ill habit*, *Jaundies*, *Dropſie*, Obſtructions of the *Liver* and *Spleen*, *Agues*, which there have their fomenting cauſes, *&c.* and alſo (as we have ſaid) it helps the ſtomack troubled by the diſeaſes of other parts with which it hath communion, all whoſe impurities the cauſes of theſe ſympathetick diſeaſes are (according to *Galen*) by this way eradicated.

Laſtly, out of the ſame Author in his Lib. 1. concerning Fevers, it alſo purgeth the ſecond and third region of the body, but 'tis only by the conſecution of the humors, unleſs you uſe the ſtrongeſt ſort, as the Antients did their vomit of

Hel-

Hellebor, whereby they drew the excrementitious humors even from the moſt remote parts into the ſtomack; by the ſame reaſon that we ſee your violent purgers do the like; therefore becauſe it is not ſafe to uſe ſuch violent means to empty withal, in relation to thoſe parts 'tis only to be eſteemed a revelling remedy.

It is alſo profitable when the humor is contained in the parts neer the ſtomack, or fals to them from ſome other place, which by this means is aptly derived; for which cauſe 'tis good for the inveterate affections of the Liver, Spleen, Meſentery, and intrals, therefore good in hypochondriacal affections, ſo that the diſeaſes of thoſe parts ariſe not from ventoſity, a hot diſtemper, or ſome tumor.

It alſo turns the courſe of the humors falling into divers parts, whether the original of the defluxion be the ſtomack, or other parts contained in the firſt region; and recals the vitious humors (falling to them) to the ſtomack from whence they are expell'd by vomit; hence (as aforeſaid) 'tis profitable in the ſympathetick affections of the Head, Fluxes of the Belly, the Sciatick, and pain of the joynts; ſo that *Galen* concludes a vomitory the moſt wholſom of all purging Medicines, ſo it work eaſily and moderately; but what obſervations are to be had in the adminiſtring it, ſee *Hipocrates* in his Aphoriſmes.

CHAP.

Chap. VI.

Of Medicinal Wines.

MEdicinal Wines as they were in use among the Antients, as may be seen in Dioscorides; so also are they now in frequent use, especially among the Northern people, and those which are curious palated; who abhorring both altering and purging Decoctions, Syrups, infusions, and Potions, for their unpleasantness, do more liberally admit this sort of Wines, stored with the virtues of the same simples, and that to good purpose, as wel because Wine doth plentifully draw forth the inmost virtues of things; as also because by the help of his most piercing spirit, conveighs them into the farthest parts speedily; you may add also, that seeing many do fancy the taste of Wormwood-Wine, and use that, and that which is called Hypocras familiarly, divers purgers may be concealed under the taste of the Wine, so that they shal not finde it out; who without such a deceit would hardly take a purging Medicine.

A Medicinal Wine *is that that hath drank up the virtues of divers simple Medicines infused in it; prepared either to alter or purge.*

Hence it may be counted two-fold, one purging, the other altering.

Both these in general are compounded, 1. *of* Must *or new Wine, such as can be had onely at the time of Vintage; and therefore you should then prepare your Wine sufficient to serve a long time, viz. that it may help*

help chronical affections. It is made in this manner; the medicaments dryed and cleanſed are groſly bruiſed and ſowed up in a thin linen ſack or bagg; (either bigger or leſſer, according as you prepare more or leſs Wine, or intend it for a ſhorter or longer time,) put them in a veſſel full of new Wine, ſo that it may hang in the middle of the Wine; let them boyl together; afterward let them work ſome dayes; and as your Muſt ſinks put new to it to fil it; when it hath done working, the veſſel being cloſe ſtopped, let all things ſteep fiftee n or twenty dayes; then let your Wine ſo cleanſed be drawn into other veſſels, (leſt by too long ſteeping the ingredients ſhould corrupt, and contract ſome ungrateful, hurtful quality, and impart it to the Wine;) ſo lay it up for your uſe.

2. Or of Wine cleanſed from the lees, and this may be prepared at any time, and therefore may be made in a leſs quantity as you pleaſe, (according as the preſent uſe requireth) after this manner; let your medicaments being dryed and cleanſed be ſomewhat groſly bruiſed, and put into a glazed veſſel (either bigger or leſs according to the quantity you intend to make) putting to them of the beſt white Wine, (or other quick taſted) three, four, ſix or eight times their weight (or more, as you intend the doſe to be great or little, or the coutinuance of it long or ſhort) let all (the veſſel being cloſe ſtopped,) ſteep eight, 12, 15, or twenty dayes (if it be prepared in a greater quantity;) otherwiſe, (if you make but little, and would uſe it ſuddenly,) for three or four dayes; afterwards ſtrain it, and ſhift it into other veſſels for your uſe; or elſe (to make it the more pleaſant and palating) let it be ſtrained thorow a Hypocras bagg, (if it be prepared in a ſmal quantity; elſe 'twil be better to infuſe the following things in it after it is ſtrained:) let it be

let it be aromatized, and sweetned with ſ. qo of ſugar, thus made, you may call it either purging, or altering claret, or hypocras, eſpecially if it be aromatized by much ſpice.

But in ſpecial, becauſe in either ſome things are to be ſpecially obſerved, I wil treat of both, beginning with the purging Wine.

The Purging Medicinal Wine.

That is called a Medicinal purging Wine which being impregnated with the virtues of divers purging ſimples, is prepared to purge either one humor alone, or more.

1. *In regard of its compoſition it is either ſimple conſiſting of one ſimple Cathartick, together with his correctors; or compound, which is made of many purgers together with their correctors, or in which are alſo infuſed divers alterers, reſpecting the part affected or humor to be purged.*

2. *In reſpect of the quality of the purgers themſelves, and the humers to be evacuated, one is an univerſal purger, others &c.*

3. *Laſtly, it is made without ſweetning or ſpicing, of the aforeſaid things onely, and is ſimply called a* purging Medicinal Wine; *or elſe 'tis over and above ſweetned with Sugar, and ſeaſoned with ſpice, and ſtrained divers times thorow a Hypocras bagg: and is called* purging Claret, *or* purgin gHy ocras (*for that term abſolutely taken ſignifies a Wine prepared for pleaſure.*)

In it three things are to be conſi lered, the Compoſition, the Uſe, and the profit.

In the COMPOSITION three things are to be examined.

1 The

1. *The Wine* of which' is made.
2. *The things to be infused* in it.
3. *The things that are sometimes dissolved in it.*

In all these we must consider both the *quality* and *quantity*.

The WINE in respect of its quality is either new and uncleansed, which is otherwise called Must, which is much commended for this purpose, because by the protection of its colour, and working heat, the colour and taste of the ingredients are the better obscured; or else *Wine* cleansed from the lees, and kept for use, either red or white.

But in relation to the *quantity*, this in *general* is limited by the use and dose; as, if the use be to continue long or short time, or the dose to be a larger or a less quantity; as thus, it may exceed the things that are to be infused, eight, six, four, or three times their weight; but those which add 12 times their weight do it in favour to them that love bibbing, perhaps not with respect to the intention. And it wil be alwaies best to let the dose for a purging Wine be as little as you can in quantity, that it may be the less, and more acceptable.

But in special, they usually define the quantity of Wine and things to be infused in it, thus; A purging Wine that is to be prescribed is to be used twelve dayes, either together, or every other day; in which you must be sure to have twelve several doses of the purgers with their correctors, and if it be needful fit alterers; then must you compute the quantity of them all, as for example, suppose them 8 ounces, now if you would

would have the dose of the Wine to be about an ounce and a half, or two ounces, prescribe it to 3 times their weight; and so for other quantities as you please; by the same way and reasons you may proceed as you see fit: but if the Wine be purely purging, made of the gentler sort of Catharticks, 'tis to be taken four, five, or six times, allowing requisite internals, as in the magisterial syrups.

The things to be *infused* in respect of their quality, are 1. either purgers onely, with their correctors, (among which *Cinnamom* is chiefly used for pleasantness of the spice; as also *Calamus Aromaticus* of the shops for its fragrant smel) either one or more: and these are to be chosen such as are not of a very strange and unpleasant taste; such are *Senna*, *Polipody*, *Epithymum*, *black Hellebor*, (especially for Melancholy persons) *Carthamus*, *Turbith*, *Hermodactils*, (to the phlegmatick) *Scammony*, *Cassia*, and *Manna sometimes*, (for the cholerick and sweet palated, though seldom) *Mechoacan*, and the seeds of *dwarf Elder*, (for purging serous humors;) of the which Wines may be prepared to purge any humors; either of some of these single, or (for the mixture of humors, and complication of intentions) of divers joyned together.

2 Or else with them are also infused divers alterers dryed, as Woods, Roots, Barks, Leaves, Seeds, Flowers, spices either fewer or more, such as respect the humor, or part, whereby the wind is rendred more familiar to it, and generally the Germans (because they are pleased with it) mix wormwood with it.

In relation to the quantity (whether it be a simple purging Wine, or made of more things) the

the number of doses for which the wine is prepared shall direct you, as for example: a Wine of *Senna* is desired for twenty doses; now the dose of *Senna* an infusion is half an ounce, or six drams; therefore ten ounces or fifteen of it is to be prescribed, adding correctors in the proportion aforesaid.

If the Wine be prepared of many purgers both gentle and strong, and also alterers joyned with them; this proportion is for the most part to be generally observed.

Of the gentle sort of purgers let there be one part.

Of the stronger sort, a quarter so much as commonly it is (though you may add them to a third part or to half, it matters not so you finde out the right dose of the Wine,) of Correctors, a quarter so much as of purgers, or else to a third part, if the purgers are the strongest sort.

Alterers should be half so much as the purgers, or a third part (if very effectual, as dryed Roots, Seeds, and Spices especially) marking this, that dryed Leaves are to be prescribed by handfuls, ounces, and drams; And flowers by pugils, and ounces also, and drams.

THINGS that are to be DISSOLVED, in respect of their quality (if perhaps the taste or smel doth not please the curious palated) are *Sugar*, some certain spices, especially *Cinnamom*, which are cast into the Wine (if it be much;) or if a smal quantity, they are put into a *Hypocras* bagg, and the Wine often poured thorow them, and is made into a purging Hypocras.

As to their *quantity*: for every pound of purging Wine you may add 3 ounces, or 4 ounces of *Sugar*, and two drams of *Cinnamom*; as the Apo-

zems, Juleps, Hypocrats, &c. are wont to be made and aromatized.

As to the USE: in it two things are chiefly to be considered, how much, and when.

As to the quantity or dose of Wine to be drank which is not alwayes one but divers, and which (of whatsoever quantity of purgers or Wine you compose your Wine withal) you shal thus find out, and exactly define.

Measure your Medicinal Wine when you strain it, and shift the vessels, and by the measure collect the weight; or else by some other means; And (as for example) suppose it to be three pound, and this was made purgative with four ounces of *Senna*, two ounces of *Polypody*: of *Epithymum* and *black Hellebor* of each an ounce and a half, there being one ounce, or an ounce and half of correctors also added over and above; Now because all these infused suffice for seventeen doses, they are also sufficient for seventeen times; then if you divide it into so many doses, you may find it out without error, and the true dose of it wil be two ounces, if you would purge strongly, for once; but if you would purge often and gently for some dayes together, half that dose wil suffice.

As to the time when; because a Medicinal Wine is usually destined for tedious, stubborn, and especially cold affections, (such as many are that have had continuance from dreggy mucilaginous humors) whose causes cannot suddenly, but must by little and little be taken away; therefore the use of it is to be continued for divers dayes (especially in the winter time, to 10, 15, or 20 together, or every other day, like the usual pils; so may this also be drank in the morning, or two hours

hours before dinner: but if it be not intended for this kinde of purging (which is called *Epicraſis*,) but that you would give it for once to work ſtrongly; the uſe of it wil be the ſame as of your other eradicators in the morning, when the indication of purging ſhall require; or if it be preſcribed inſtead of your purging magiſterial ſyrup the uſe is the ſame with that once or twice in a moneth, in the morning like other purgers.

The FORM of *Preſcribing* may eaſily appear from the manner of compounding it.

The UTILITY: as to the benefit ariſing from this form, whether you look upon the virtues of the ſimples infuſed that are to be extracted, & which the Wine doth copiouſly attract to it ſelf, or the conveighing them into the moſt intimate parts of the body, by the help of its piercing ſpirit: or whether you conſider the familiarity of it with our nature; which makes it be friendly received by her; or its formal eſſence, what affinity it hath by its very ſubſtance with the radical moiſture, heat, and ſpirit of the ſolid parts of our body, for which cauſe it eaſily is converted into them, and united with them, carrying with it the virtues of thoſe ſimples ſteeped in it, *I* ſay conſidering all theſe, it cannot but be to our great benefit: ſo that whether it be to purge, and ſeperate the dreggy humors, confuſed with the reſt of the humours, ſpirits, and ſolid parts, it can do it perfectly, by the familiarity it hath with our nature, whereby it may inſinuate it ſelf, and the virtues it is imbued withal; or whether it be to alter divers wayes, either to cleanſe away the relicks of the foregoing impurities, or reſtore the natural vigour by appropriat means, or to ſtrengthen the parts: either of

theſe are this way effectually performed through the ſympathy it hath with nature, and is united to it, together with the Medicinal virtues it carries with it.

But though the benefit of Medicinal VVine be ſo great, yet 'tis not ſo frequently uſed in all regions, nor at all times of the year; but is moſt uſual with them that inhabit cold Countries, and chiefly in the Winter, Spring, and Autumn.

In general, 'tis good in a cold time of the year, a cold Country, and cold temper of the body, &c. as is ſpecially profitable in chronical affections, & a cold time of the year for delicate palated perſons, and is preſcribed againſt paleneſs of colour, difficulty of breathing, confirmed obſtructions of the bowels: and for them that are alſo paralytical, though VVine be forbidden to them, (in which reſpect wine made of Honey would be much better) in affections of the ſtomack, and weakneſſe ariſing from crude cold humors, VVormwood-wine made purging would be excellent.

The Medicinal altering Wine.

UNder the notion of altering Wines are contained Wines imbued with divers faculties, which both reſpect certain parts, break the relikes of humors left behinde blot out the remainder of diſeaſes, and alſo ſpecifically corroborate (as of ſimple Wines) are Sage wine *for cold affections of the brain,* Hyſop *and* Elecampane wine *for the* Breaſt, *and* wormwood wine *which is familiar to the ſtomack.) As alſo they which evacuate, yet without a purger, (as Wines preſcribed to move ſweat, break the Stone, provoke Urine, and the contrary) as alſo thoſe which*

excite

excite, cheriſh, and confirm the virtues of the principal parts; as thoſe which are made of ſpices to ſtrengthen.

And this is (as the purging Wine) in reſpect of its compoſition either ſimple *or* compound.

In reſpect of its effect, either altering the body, humors, or ſpirits, in the firſt ſecond or third qualities, or elſe ſtrengthening.

Moreover, 'tis made either without ſweetning, or ſpicing, and is ſimply called a Medicinal altering Wine; or elſe is ſeaſoned with ſuch things, and let often run thorow a Hypocras bagg, as above, and is called a Claret or Hypocras, although theſe names belong to ſuch as are made for pleaſure.

In it three things are to be weighed, the *Compoſition*, the *Uſe*, and the *Utility*.

The COMPOSITION is the ſame with that of the purging Wine; either 'tis made with Muſt, (when the uſe is to continue long, for the altering of chronical and ſtubborn affections,) & one ſimple medicament dryed; or of more, reſpecting the affection, humor, and part affected with a particular propriety; or elſe with wine defecated.

But what ought to be the proportion of the muſt, and dryed ingredients, is before declared in the purging wine; yet you may add (becauſe altering wines may be taken in a larger quantity, and ought to be ſo) a greater quantity of wine then in the former, to ten times, or a 11 times the quantity of the ingredients.

But the quantity both of wine and ingredients is to be limited by the doſe that is to be taken either greater or leſs, by the ſhort or long continuance of its uſe. Laſtly by the quality of the ſim-

ples, either weak, or effectual, as that which spices in part to it.

We have said before that this sort of Wines when they are passed thorow a hypocras bagg, and sweetned, are called clarets.

Hither also belongs that which is otherwise called *Hypocras* absolutely, which is also corroborating, composed of divers spices, pleasant both in smel and taste; as of *Cinamom*, *Ginger*, *Grains* of *paradise*, *Cardamomes*, *Pepper*, infused to two drams in one pound of claret Wine, for some hours, afterwards strained thorow a Hypocras bagg divers times, adding sugar s. q. viz: two ounces or three ounces; but 'tis generally made less compounded of *Cinamom* only, but if in stead of sugar the Wine be relished with hony, 'twil be vere profitable in cold affections, where vvine alone is hurtfull, as in the Palsey, *&c.* the honey working most effectually; and this is called *Oxomel*, or *honied Wine*; and also *Mulsum*, which the Ancients used much, made of one part of honey, and two or three parts of VVine, Spices also being added if need required, either to the quantity of half a part, or to one fourth part, or one fifth part.

The USE contains these two questions: how much, and when?

As to the time when, it may be given every day, or every other day, or interposing a longer time, according as the disease requires, one, two, or three hours before dinner.

As to the quantity or dose, that is moderated according to the quality and quantity of the ingredients, and the divers proportion of the wine they are infused in; as when the ingredients infused

ſed are the fewer, or leſs effectual, and the VVine in a good quantity, either ſix or ten times ſo much as the ingredients, by ſo much the greater may the doſe be, & ſo alſo on the contrary.

But in general, 'tis given from one ounce to four ounces.

The *FORM* of *Preſcribing* may appear out of what is ſaid before.

The UTILITY alſo may be found by what is aforeſaid; it works moſt effectually in altering, diſcuſſing, and taking away the relikes of diſeaſes, confirming and ſtrengthening the parts weakned by the fore-going affections; alſo in provoking ſweat, Urine, and Courſes. Laſtly there is no affection chronical and cold which wil not reap benefit by this form of Medicine.

CHAP. *VII.*

Of an Emulſion.

AN *Emulſion* is an altering Medicine, the invention of late VVriters, ſo called from aſſwaging the affections, or rather becauſe it is like Milk, or elſe becauſe that milky ſubſtance by the effuſion of the Liquor is expreſſed, or as it were milked forth.

But an Emulſion is a liquid form of a medicine potable, prepared out of the kernelly part of fruits, and ſome ſeeds beaten in a mortar, and then with ſome convenient liquor diſſolved, and as it were milked thorow the ſtrainer, (from whence its name) uſed to alter divers wayes, made only for preſent uſe.

In it three things are to be considered, *Composition*, *Use*, and *utility*.

In the COMPOSITION also three.

1. The *matter* of which stamped the milky juyce is drawn forth of.

2 The liquor with which it is milked out.

3. Things to be dissolved in it.

In all these the quality and quantity are to be considered.

The MATTER in relation to its *quality* are both fruits, as Almonds, viz: the sweet, blanched, and also seeds, *viz.* the 4 greater cold seeds, of which emulsions are every where usually made.

To these are sometimes added both fruits, as the kernels of pine nuts in affections of the breast, or where we would moysten, and also restore, as in Hectick; and also seeds, as usually of white poppy, Lettuce, and Purslane; when we would either provoke sleep, or cool more effectually, or thicken thin & hot humors, and temper their acrimony.

In respect of their quantity, both fruits and seeds are in general prescribed from one ounce to three ounces, but in special, there may be of fruits, an ounce and half or two ounces; of seeds, one ounce, or an ounce and half.

The LIQUOR with which this milky substance is drawn forth, in relation to his quality is either fair water, or some simple distill'd waters; or usually the decoction of whole Barley, especially where we desire to cleanse; or ptisan, that is, the second decoction of huld barly, after the first water is thrown away, or else the decoction of liquorice, where we would lenifie; or the decoction of other pleasant things tending to the same purpose.

In

In regard of the quantity for every particular dose, three ounces, or four ounces will suffice; hence (because Emulsions are for the most part prepared only for three doses, for 'twil not be kept longer without corrupting) you may prescribe 9 ounces, or one pound.

Things to be DISSOLVED, in relation to their quality, are sometimes Sugar alone; or as it is generally received, some fit Syrup pleasant to the taste, that may moisten, lenifie, and cool, as *Syrup of Violets*, and *Maidenhair*.

Sometimes to make it the more pleasant, there is added some Rose-water.

They also which dissolve *Manus Christi* made and with Pearls do very wel.

As to the quantity of sweetners, one ounce, or an ounce and half at most wil serve for one dose; an ounce, or an ounce and half of Rose-water wil serve for the whole *Emulsion*, and a dram of *Manus Christi* for every dose.

The USE: in it three things are to be considered, the *manner how*, the *quantity how much*, and the time *when*.

As to the manner; 'tis taken either by it self in the form of a drink, or else 'tis often prescribed 3 ounces, or 4 ounces of it with the broth of a chick altered with appropriat things.

As to the quantity, the dose is apparent by what is already said.

As to the time when; 'tis taken morning and evening; and if it be prescribed to procure sleep, then at the time of going to sleep.

The FORM of prescribing, ℞ *&c.* let them be beaten in a marble Mortar, pouring to them by little and little, *&c.* in the strained Liquor dissolve

diſſolve, &c. ſo make an *Emulſion* for three or 4 doſes, to be uſed as aforeſaid.

The UTILITY: an *Emulſion* is not only preſcribed to lenifie and aſſwage the affections of the Breaſt and Lungs, eſpecially the hot and dry; the burning of the Reins, and Bladder, ſharpneſs of Urine, and Gonorrhea, as they uſually will have it; but to other uſes alſo: againſt thirſt, and to temper heat in any hot diſeaſes; and therefore is moſt peofitable in burning continual Fevers, to temper the drought of them that alwayes accompanieth ſuch diſeaſes; therefore are they very uſual in the Hecticks, and to provoke ſleep; and alter in Fevers or any hot diſtempers inſtead of Apozems.

Generally 'tis uſed to lenifie, cool, and moiſten.

CHAP. VIII.

Of Almond Milk.

THis *differs not much in colour and taſte from an* Emulſion, *only 'tis uſually thicker than it. This is two-fold,* one *more liquid, being a milky ſubſtance drawn out of* Almonds, *like the Emulſion as aforeſaid;* another *thicker, made thick with boyling, of which at preſent.*

And this is a *reſtorative Medicine*, ſomewhat thinner of ſubſtance than ſyrup, much like Milk, (hence 'tis called *Almond Cream*, & Almond milk) drawn and ſweetned with Sugar, prepared both to alter and nouriſh.

But

But although the Phyſitian uſeth not to preſcribe theſe particularly, but only in general to wil it; yet a Phyſitian ſhal conſider three things in it; *Compoſition*, *Uſe*. and *Utility*.

As to the *Compoſition*, 'tis made of two ounces of blanched Almonds, which are beaten very fine in a Mortar, pouring to them by little and little half a pound of warm water, then ſtrain them, and add to them one ounce, one ounce and half, or two ounces of Sugar; then boyl them a little, and give it.

Note, that if the party deſire it thicker, you may add more Almonds, and Sugar; and on the contrary, if thinner.

Note alſo, that when this Almond Cream is intended to cauſe ſleep, (as it often is) you may add the ſeeds of *white Poppy*, and L*ettuce*.

The USE: as to the time, it may be taken at any convenient hour, but 'tis generally given at the going to ſleep.

The *Form* of Preſcribing, R *&c.* [ſee the Emulſion.

The UTILITY is the ſame as of the Emulſion; it tempers, lenifies, cools, moiſteneth; hence 'tis uſed in aſſwaging, and cleanſing the affections of the breaſt in Fevers, and other hot diſtempers, and watchings, *&c.* See the Emulſion.

CHAP.

CHAP. IX.

Of Barly Cream.

THat which we (from the matter it is made of) call Barly cream, the Antients from the manner of preparing called Ptisan: which was a meat made of barly hulled, and baked, (for the Greek word signifies, to hull and bark,) and water; usually we call this barly cream; but our ptisan is a drink.

And though it be seldom prescribed, yet 'tis COMPOUNDED, either after the grosser manner of barly cleansed and boyled, which is given together with the broth, adding sugar as you list; but this is only convenient for sound people.

Or else that which is truly barly cream, of hulled barley two ounces; let it boyle in fair water, over a gentle fire, then cast away the water, and boyl it in a new water four or five houres with a gentle fire, then pulp the barly thorow a strainer, sweeten it with one ounce, or ounce and a half, or two ounces of sugar, and after let them be a little boyled.

The USE: anciently it was wont to be the meat of severish people, but now a dayes 'tis given for the most part neer sleeping time; and then if they are troubled with over-watching, there is added to it little of the emulsion prepared with white poppy seeds.

The UTILITY of it is much in fevers, in which it is an alimentory medicine; cooling, cleansing, nourishing much, & breeding good juyce; it moystens, and is best for affections of the breast, & hecticks.

CHAP.

Chap. X.

Of Milk, and the whey of Milk.

Milk alſo happens to be preſcribed, but chiefly in the phthyſick and diſentery, and that with ſome caution, both in the ſort of milk, and alſo in the doſe, and manner of giving it; Aſſes milk is chiefly commended in the hectick, becauſe it reſtores radical moyſture, and is of good juice; Cows milk *is the fatteſt, and fulleſt of butter; ſheeps milk is fulleſt of cheeſe, Goats milk moderate between all, beſt for perſons extenuated.*

As to the Use, Dose, and *manner* of Prescribing, 'tis this, ℞ of Aſſes milk, (when you would cool & cleanſe, but Goats milk when you would nouriſh) four ounces; of ſugar or honey (leſt it corrupt or grow ſowr in the ſtomack,) one ounce, and this for the firſt doſe; for the ſecond doſe increaſing one ounce, to five ounces, ſo proceeding til you come to ten ounces, or twelve ounces, and then decreaſing again by the ſame degrees, til you are returned to the ſame quantity: let it be taken 4 hours before meat, neither ſleeping, nor moving the body violenly after the taking of it. But the uſe of milk is never to be begun, til the body be very wel cleanſed.

The UTILITY: 'tis chiefly preſcribed for thoſe that are hectical, for it fattens, reſtores; in the uſe of it we muſt have a care that the body be not impure, for in a cold ſtomack it ſowres; in a hot, it turns to a nidorouſneſs, from whence comes Head-ach; it is not therefore profitable for them that

that are Feveriſh, or have their ſhort rib-region puſt up: but 'tis very commodious in the dyſentery, both to leniſie, and alſo cleanſe and heal the Ulcer, eſpecially if it be chalibeated, and you give good quantity of it morning and evening, with ane ſcruple of *Terra ſigillata*, four hours before any meat.

The *WHEY OF MILK* is not nouriſhing, but medicinal, and evacuates both ſerous and aduſt humors: if it be liberally taken it cools, and is good in thoſe that are Feveriſh, and in the heat of the Liver and Reins in ſummer time; but moſt profitable in Melancholy, and affections proceeding from it, as the Leproſie, Scabbineſs, *&c.* eſpecially if *Fumitory* be ſteeped in it.

This is the USE and manner of PRESCRIBING. ℞ VVhey of Milk let it be ſtrained & boyled, (both becauſe it is windy, as alſo that any thing of curdineſs in it may be ſeparated and ſettled;) then ſteep in two pound of it, for one night, one handful of *Fumitory*, of *Succory*, m *ſſ.* when 'tis ſtrained add to it an ounce, or an ounce and half of Sugar; but the ſecond day two ounces are to be added more; ſo every day increaſing til you come to three pounds; afterwards on the contrary decreaſing til you come to one pound. Otherwiſe let one pound ſerve every day for a moneth together, ſteeping in it the ſame quantity of *Fumitory*, adding to it when 'tis ſtrained one ounce of Sugar; and in Melancholy people as much of the Cider or juice of pippins. Otherwiſe 'tis uſed for fevers and heats, to eight ounces, with ſorrel ſteeped in it, and that in the morning four hours before meat.

CHAP.

Chap. XI.

Of Mead, or Hydromel.

HOnied drink was famous among the Antients; it is called by them Honey wine, or otherwise *Mulsum*, now a dayes much used by the most abstemious, and to them to whom wine alone is hurtful.

And this is two-fold, the common and Medicinal, either simple, or compound.

The *common* Mead is two-fold also, smal and strong.

The *smal* or *wateriſh* is composed in *Meſue*, of one part of Honey, and eight of water; but now a dayes 'tis more diluted, as made of 10 or 12 parts of water.

'Tis boyled til it froth no more, *viz.* to the consumption of the fourth or fifth part; then 'tis strained and kept; it is seasoned also for the better grace with two drams, three drams, or half an ounce of *Cinamom, &c.*

The strong or Winish Mead is much stronger, so called because it imitates the taste and heating virtue of Wine, and is as it were a Malmsey drink. This is to be made of one part of Honey, and 4, (some put six or seven) parts of water (it matters not because it must be boyled til a new Egg wil swim on it,) then put it up in a vessel wel glazed, stop it close, and set it in the sun, or other warm place, a moneth or fourteen dayes and this is the metheglin of the English: unless that

that they more hang in it tyed in a ragg 2 drams, or more of yest, or Leven, and add to it half a dram, or two scruples of spices; to every pound; and so according to the quantity of Hony.

The USE and UTILITY, it is prescribed for the ordinary drink in cold affections, and especially the phlegmatick, and where the abstaining from VVine is advantagious, or where the use of it is hurtful, as in the Palsey; or when we desire effectual virtues, powerful both to alter cold humors, and strengthen the natural heat; it also wonderfully preserves from putrefaction: But as it is convenient for them that are of cold complexion, and for old men; so is it hurtful for those that are severish, cholerick, or hot of temper: because it soon turns into choler, and grows bitter, as we may finde in boyling it over-much, or by keeping it too long: therefore *Hippocrates* forbids it to them that are very cholerick, or that have great spleens, in which it is too suddenly drawn into the body; from hence it is that it is the cause of crudities, and incredible windiness of the intrals; it is also according to *Hippocrates* diuretical, wonderfully cleansing and driving forth sand, or gravel.

The *Winish* performs this more forcibly, and like *Malmsey* powerfully concocts cold humours, expectorates, strengthens the stomack and concoction, discusseth windiness, & concocts crudities; as also doth the commoner sort according to *Galen*; it wonderfully loosens humors in the breast, and is good for them that be asthmatick.

The *Medicinal* Mead is easily prepared of the simple by boyling dryed simples in it, respecting the part to which it is destined, and of these such

as are most pleasant; let them be boyled after it is clear scum'd, & let them be (for example) four handfuls of Herbs; boyl them, and strain the Liquor from them, in which infuse for two or three hours half an ounce, or six drams of spices.

The *Utility* is great, and the virtue of it specifical, (besides what is afore-said) in taking away diseases, especially cold ones, and those of long continuance, as the Palsey, *&c.*

Chap. XII.

Of Sugred Water, and Barly Water.

SUGRED WATER *is a more sweet and pleasing drink than Mead, , and is almost as effectual, in those in whom we abstain from the use of Mead for fear of heat, and is chiefly convenient for them that are abstemious.*

It is made of Fountain-water clarified at the fire, 12 parts, and sugar one part, more or less to your palate.

You may aromatize it with *Cinnamom*, or in fevers with *Saunders* to 3 drams, or half an ounce; so let them use it for their ordinary drink

PTISAN was a meat of the Antients, which we now call barly Cream. Our ptisan is a drink fit broth for the healthy, and Feverish, and when heat is either present, or imminent, and where Wine is forbidden.

And this is made divers wayes, according to the desire of them that take it.

Either it is made simply of whole Barley, and fountain-water, to one part of Barly, ten, fifteen, or which is better, twenty parts of water, as 'tis generally made in the shops, which is to be boyled to the consumption of five parts, and til the barly swel much; (*Nicholaus* therefore directs ill to boyl it to the consumption of fifteen parts, unless it be for meat) and such like is vulgarly called in the shops, *Barley water*, and *decoction of Barley*.

Or else *Liquorice*, *Raisins of the Sun*, the *roots of Grass or Sorrel*, and other thiugs, according to the palate of him that takes it, are boyled in it, though in smal quantity; but 'tis seldom now a dayes prescribed by the Physitian.

The UTILITY: it moistens, cools, cleanses, yeilds little nourishment, but such as is fit for cholerick and sanguine people, and for them that are in fevers, or have hot affections of the Liver, Stomack, or Reins.

Note, that Barly water, or that which we now cal *Ptisan*, consists of whole barly, one part; of water, twenty parts, boyled til the barly swel, and the cream of Barly, til it be bursted: but that which we cal Barly cleansed and boyled, is boyled til it go into a pulp, represents the Ptisan of the Antients; and if it be pulped thorow a hair strainer, 'tis called the juyce of Barly.

CHAP.

Chap. XIII.

Of Dyet-drink.

By this name of Diet, we do not ſo much under-ſtand the regulating of the ſix things not natural, as divers decoctions made of uſual ſweating Medicines; through the whole uſe of which, becauſe an exact and accurate way of living temperately is to be obſerved, from hence it is that theſe have been abſolutely called by the name of Diet.

But that which we underſtand by the name Diet, *is a decoction of one of the uſual ſudorifical Medicines, or more, made in a fit Liquor, prepared either to alter ſimply, or evacuate inſenſibly by tranſpiration, or ſenſibly by ſweat.*

Therefore a Diet-drink is to be accounted two-fold, altering and evacuating.

The altering Diet-drink.

Although theſe four uſual ſweating Medicines ſeem to be deſtined only for provoking ſweat, yet are they often preſcribed with very good ſucceſs in divers affections without ſweating; hence it is that I call it an altering Diet-drink.

In this three things are to be conſidered, the *Compoſition*, the *Uſe*, and *Utility*.

In the COMPOSITION three things alſo, the matter of which 'tis made, the *Liquor*, and the *things to be diſſolved* in it.

The MATTER in relation to its quality, is two-fold.

1. Some of the common Sudorificks, as *Guaiacum*, *China*, *Sassafras*, and *Salsaparilla*.

2. Divers alterers, as roots, leaves, seeds, flowers, &c. respecting the affection, the humor offending, and part affected.

But in special, that matter is chosen diversly, according to the variety of the parts in which the affections that are to be removed are inherent.

For in altering and removing powerfully phlegmatick and inveterate affections, we usually take *Guaiacum*, *China*, or *Salsaparilla*, either alone, or mixed together with fit alterers, as aforesaid.

But in affections of the breast, as the stuffing, Ulcer, and putrefaction of the Lungs, (in which now a dayes such an altering diet is usually prescribed, and is every where called the *pectoral decoction*,) we chuse either *China* alone, or else there is sometimes added to it *Salsaparilla*, or *Sassafras*, together, with alterers appropriated to the breast.

So that from what is said before, an altering Diet *drink may be reckoned two-fold*, 1. Not pectoral, *insensibly consuming the phlegmatick affections of divers parts*, 2. Pectoral, *viz. a decoction of* China, (*sometimes* Salsaparilla *being added*) *prepared of pectoral seeds and fruits, such is only now a dayes prescribed.*

As to the *quantity*; those sudorificks in a diet-drink not pectoral are prescribed either alone, or mixed, to six ounces more or less, according as the time, age, and region shal further require; but alterers, as Roots, Leaves, Seeds, Flowers, either all or some of them are to be added to half the quan-

quantity they are appointed for the Apozem aforeſaid.

But in a pectoral *Diet*-drink, whoſe baſis is *China*, this (if alone) is added to one ounce; if other things aforeſaid be joyned to it, then to two drams, or three drams of theſe, they uſually take ſix drams of *China*.

Of alterers pectoral fruits are added to an ounce and a half, or two ounces; pectoral ſeeds to an ounce, or an ounce and a half; and if (as ſometimes in the *Phthyſis*) the fleſh of Craw-fiſh, or tortoiſes be added, 'tis to an ounce, or two ounces.

The LIQUOR, in relation to its quality in an altering Diet drink not pectoral, is *common water*, or ſome other *fit liquor*, as before in the Apozem, chiefly *Mead*) becauſe theſe ſorts of decoctions for the moſt part reſpect cold affections, and humors. *In* a pectoral Diet-drink alſo, either *common water*, or *decoction of Barly* is taken; but with this proviſo, that the *China* be infuſed in this Liquor for ſome hours; then let it be put up together with the pectoral fruits and ſeeds in the belly of a chick, or hen; then let them boyl in the aforeſaid Liquor til all be boyled to pieces.

As to its quantity, take 10 or 12 pints, or *q. ſ.* as is required to boyl it throughly.

Things to be *diſſolved*, as to their quality, in a diet-drink not pectoral, are ſometimes ſyrup, or ſugar, and are preſcribed to be diſſolved together with the aromaticks, as in an altering Apozem.

In a pectoral drink ſugar of Roſes is generally preſcribed, yet it may be alſo ſome fit ſyrup.

As to their *quantity*, they are diſſolved to an ounce, or an ounce and a half, in every doſe.

The Use: in it mark three things, the *manner*, the *quantity*, and the *time*.

The decoction not pectoral, as to the *manner* indrinking, is to be taken without ſweating.

As to the *united quantity*, or doſe, it is to be taken to four ounces, or ſix ounces; as to the divided quantity, it is to be uſed ten or fifteen dayes.

As to the *time*, this ſort of alterer ought to be taken in the morning.

The pectoral drink alſo, as to the manner, is taken without ſweat.

As to the *doſe*, ſix ounces alſo, and is to be continued alſo for fifteen dayes.

The *Time* alſo is the morning.

And this is the Form of Prescribing.

In a decoction not pectoral, R. *&c.* make a decoction, keep it in a glazed veſſel for four or five morning doſes, which (the body being firſt purged) let him continue for ten or fifteen dayes; in the mean time obſerving a moderate and drying diet; and for his ordinary drink, let him uſe the ſecond decoction of the aforeſaid ingredients, which is called a *Bochette*.

But in a pectoral one, R. (China, or other thing, infuſe them in, *&c.* of water, then put them in the belly of a chick, together with the fruits, *&c.* boyl it til it be all to pieces, adding at the latter end of the decoction the leaves, *&c.* (*viz.* the preparers) ſtraine all with a gentle preſſure; in one pound of the ſtrained liquor diſſolve, *&c.* for two doſes, to be given in the morning, keeping his bed two or three hours after, without ſweating; let him continue this fifteen, or 20, or 30 dayes, the body being firſt purged with *Manna*, which is to be repeated once in fifteen dayes: in the mean time

time living temperatly, and uſing the ſecond decoction of China, or ſmall mead, for his ordinary drink.

The Utility is remarkeable in all long-laſting affections, when your ſcope requires the attenuating, reſolving, or otherwiſe inſenſibly conſuming that collection of filthy humors & foments this ſort of chronical affections; as alſo to rarifie the wayes and paſſages by which they are to be digeſted, and to prepare them powerfully for expurgation: neither is it ſafe to uſe them with ſweat, as in the *Aſthma*, and *Phthyſis* eſpecially, in which now a dayes this ſort of diet is onely preſcribed; in which affections 'tis pernitious to uſe either purgers, or Sudorificks. Neither can we conſume or evacuate thoſe humors that are the fomenters of ſuch affections any other way.

An evacuating Diet-drink.

SUch as is now a dayes for the moſt part only preſcribed, is here underſtood, which conſumes and empties the morbifical cauſes by ſweat.

And this is two-fold, one only ſweating, the other is alſo purgative.

The ſweating decoction is now only properly called a Diet-drink; and is (as I ſaid before) that which viſibly conſumes the Antecedent, and conjunct cauſes of diſeaſes by ſweatings.

In this three things are to be marked; the *Compoſition*, the *Uſe*, and *Utility*.

In the COMPOSITION two things are to be conſidered.

1. The *matter* of which this sort of decoctions are made.
2. The *Liquor* in which they are boyled.

And in either of them both the *quality*, and the *quantity*.

The *matter*, in respect of the quality is either sudorifical, or also altering both at once sometimes.

As to the sudorificks, 'tis compounded either of *Guaiacum*, and its *bark only*; or only *China*, seldom of *Salsaparilla* alone, and hardly ever of *Sassafras* alone.

Either of *Guaiacum* as the basis, with sometimes one, sometimes two of the others mixed with it, according to the divers intentions of the Physitian; or else that the too much heat of *Guaiacum* might be allayed, yet retaining the same benefit of sweating.

Or of *China* as the basis, with *Salsaparilla*, or *Sassafras* where the scope is to heat less; yet it dries as much, and consumes vitious humors equally.

As to the alterers, it is most profitable (with the aforesaid) to add divers altering simples towards the end of the decoction, that may be appropriated to the humor and part affected, whereby the Diet-drink becomes famous; or else they are added to this end only to correct & allay the heating and drying quality of the *Guaiacum*, lest it too much inflame the Liver; and for this are used Roots, Leaves, Seeds, Fruits, Flowers, either more or less.

As to the *quantity*, sudorificks prescribed alone, or mixt, should be allotted to one ounce, or an ounce

As

and a half for every doſe; and becauſe a ſweating diet-drink is uſually preſcribed for 4 doſes, only four ounces, or ſix ounces ought to be preſcribed; which quantity may be leſſened or augmented according to the variety of the tempers, age, ſtrength, time of the year, conſtitution of the diſeaſe, Country, *&c.*

But the alterers when they are added to them, ſhould be preſcribed to half the quantity they are appointed for the Apozem; and as to their order they ſhould be ſet after the ſudorificks; this is every where to be obſerved, that in the decoction of *Guaiacum* you are to add *Liquorice*, and *Raiſins of the Sun*, *ana*, an ounce, or one ounce, and a half.

The LIQUOR, in relation to its *quality* is preſcribed to be fountain-water.

As to the *quantity*, although by the precepts of art in the decoction of Roots and Woods it ought to be eight times ſo much as of the things to be boyled; yet becauſe in the decoction of theſe ſweating drinks much of the Liquor uſeth to be waſted, it ought to be twelve times their quantity; ſo that to one ounce of Sudorificks ſhould be one pint of water, and then to be boyled til half be waſted, which is the moſt uſual manner; it may alſo be preſcribed to a pint and half, and then boyled til two thirds be waſted.

The USE: as to the *quantity*, eight ounces of this ſort of decoction may be given.

As to the *manner*, let it be drank warm, covering the body with many clothes more than is wont.

As to the time, 'tis beſt in the morning ſometimes, though ſeldom 'tis repeated at evening:

in

in very strong and phlegmatick bodies, abounding with excrementitious humours.

The FORM OF PRESCRIBING is after this example of *Guaiacum*, ℞. the shavings of the wood of *Guaiacum* four ounces, the bark of the same two ounces; let them be infused in six or nine pints; of fountain water twenty four hours, over warm embers, the Vessel being close stopped; then boil them with a gentle fire of fresh charcoal without smoak, till half be wasted; afterwards run them throrow an hypocras bag, (but if you desire the decoction the stronger, presse them out gently, sweeten the decoction with three ounces, or four ounces of Sugar, and aromatize it with a dram and a half, or two drams of Cinnamom (but this sweetning and aromatizing may better be omitted in those that are lesse curious palated) so keep it in a glazed vessel for your use; let him take of this decoction eight ounces warm in the morning, covering him warmer than usually, and let him sweat as he can reasonably endure it.

Note, that when Alterers are prescribed with the sudorificks, it may be appointed in the form thus, towards the end of the decoction adde such things, *&c.*

℞ the remainders of the decoction aforesaid, (*viz.* when no other simples are added to it) add (if you will) an ounce of some of the aforesaid sudorificks fresh, infuse them in 12 pints of fountain water, eight or twelve hours, boil them till a third part or a quarter onely be wasted, strain them through an hypocras bag, sweeten it with *s.q.* of Sugar, and aromatize it with a dram and a half, or two drams of Cinnamom, so make it

it for a ſecond decoction, or a bochet for your ordinary drink.

Obſerve, that this manner of diet ſhould be continued for fifteen, twenty, or thirty dayes (unleſſe the ſtrength fails, then may it be now and then intermitted three or four days ſpace) in which ſpace let him rather uſe roſt meats then boiled, as mountain and field-birds ſtuck thorow with Cinnamom and cloves, as alſo hens and capons, bisket-bread baked with anniſeed, and raiſins of the Sun, torrified Almonds, and in the laſt courſe at table, coriander and anniſeed comfits: let him uſe the ſecond decoction ſtrained, and aromatized with ſugar and Cinnamom, *q. ſ.* for his ordinary drink, but if his belly be bound, let a common glyſter be now & then adminiſtred, or which is beſt, every ſix or eight dayes, renew the uſe of pills, potions, or other purgers preſcribed, (that the more groſſe matter wch (the thinner parts being conſumed otherwiſe) uſeth to remain behinde in the bowels may alſo be expelled) on which day let him abſtain from the uſe of the decoction.

And as they ought to be purged well before the uſe of the decoction, ſo ought they alſo every eleventh or twelfth day.

There uſeth alſo in the preſcribing theſe diet-drinks, of digeſting head-herbs, (the hair being firſt ſhaved off) two bags to be applied to the head reaſonable hot for a quarter of an hour, til the ſweat burſt forth of the face, as ſoon as the drink is taken down) to provoke ſweat, and alſo after ſweat is wiped off, eſpecially in affections of the head, as well to digeſt as conſume the offenſive cauſe; and when theſe are taken away, the head is to be wrapped in warmed locks of

hemp

Hempe, fumed with the ordinary fume.

The UTILITY is eminent and plentifull, not onely in externall, but alſo in the internall affections, eſpecially the contumacious, whoſe cauſes have taken deep rooting, and could not be removed by ordinary purgers, and alterers, ſo that they need theſe ſorts of medicines, which by their ſubtilty and tenuity of parts may either inſenſibly diſſolve them, or viſibly expell them by ſweat, and diſcuſſe the reliques of vitious humours; ſo alſo is it uſed againſt inveterate defluxions from the head, and catarrhes of long continuance, the ill habit, dropſy, and other affections of like ſort, proceeding from abundance of phlegmatick humours, and alſo againſt the French Pox, &c. *Thus much concerning the ſweating diet-drink.*

But the PURGING-SWEATING diet-*drink is a decoction, which in the aforeſaid diet moves both ſweating, and to the ſtool together, an invention of the Modern Phyſitians, and not uſed till within theſe few years; neither was it invented without great hope of a happy ſucceſſe: ſeeing that by the help of this, both the inner parts of the humours are expell'd by ſweat; and groſſer reliques, which otherwiſe uſe to ſtick very firmly to the intralls and other parts, are by this means profitably eradicated together; nor matters is all what ſome may object, concerning the contrary motions for the natural heat, that inſtrument of the expulſive faculty, together with the faculty it ſelf, is ready indifferently for any motion, ſo that where there is a way made by the ſtimulation or attraction of the medicine, it indifferently ſtirs up it*

ſelf

ſelf for the expulſion of the morbificall cauſe, eſpecially ſince it is approved and confirmed by experience it ſelf; this diſcovereth the reaſon of the name and definition.

In this three things are conſidered, the *compoſition*, the *uſe*, and the *Utility*.

In the COMPOSITION, chiefly two things.

The *Matter* or Ingredients, and the *Liquor*; in either of them, the *Quality*, and the *Quantity*.

As to the MATTER in regard of its *quality*, you may take the aforeſaid *decoction*, conſiſting as is aforetaid of onely ſudorificks, or elſe alſo of altering ſimples joyned with them, from whence it hath the name of ſweating.

To this matter (that the decoction may be alſo purgative) thoſe things are added which are ſpoken of in the purging Apozem, as thoſe purgers appointed there for the baſis, *Senna*, *Carthamum*, and *Polypody*, as alſo other purgers, that chiefly are appropriated to the phlegmatick humour, *turbith*, *hermodactills*, *rheubarb*, and agarick, (together with their correctors) more or leſſe, as is for your purpoſe.

As to the *quantity*: concerning Sudorificks, and alterers, ſee before; but purgers are to be added near the quantity they are preſcribed in, for the purging Apozem, or ſomething leſſe, (*viz.* by a quarter) becauſe the ſtrength can not bear ſuch copious evacuations, both by ſtool and ſweating together.

Of the Liquor, both touching its quality, and quantity, ſee before.

The USE: as to the *quantity*, 'tis given to four ounces, or five ounces; as to the *time*, in the morning, and that for four dayes uſually, in the beginning of theſe ſort of diets; for in the reſt of the dayes following, the ſimpler ſweating diet drink is to be uſed without the purgers.

As to the FORM, 'tis this, Rx. *&c. i: e:* the things aforeſaid, of the ſudorifical decoction; in the end of the decoction add the purgers aforeſaid; or elſe with them the alterers; let them be ſtrained, *&c.* ſee before.

This purging decoction being ended, and the four morning doſes being finiſhed, let them uſe the ſame decoction (excepting the purgers) 15 or 20 dayes, *&c.*

The UTILITY: this ſort of *Diet*-drink is moſt uſual our late Phyſitians in bodies that are very foul, and alſo ſtrong, which require that double evacuation; to expel hoſe morbifical humors reſiding in the firſt, ſecond, and third region, that both the groſs with the thin might by one labour be caſt forth: but this as it is moſt profitable, ſo moſt uſual in the ordering and curing the *French Pox.*

ANIMADVERSIONS.

THis is to be noted about *Sudoriſicks*, in the forms of *Preſcribing*, and ſpecifically.

{ *Of the* Wood Guaiacum *it is ſaid*, Rx. *of the reſinous* Lignum ſanctum, *i. e. Guaiacum.*

{ *Of the* Wood Saſſafras, Rx. *of the wood Saſſafras newly brought over, together with his bark cut or ſhaved into thin ſlices. And*

Of

Of the Roote China, ℞ of the weightieſt root of China, not worm-eaten or rotten, cut in thin ſlices, &c.. and of the root

SALSAPARILLA, ℞ of Salſaparilla cut in ſlices, together with his hairy ſtrings.

This alſo is to be noted, that the decoction of China *is to be kept in a warm place, otherwiſe 'twil grow ſowre, and the decoction of the Wood Saſſafras if kept wil loſe his grateful ſmel.*

CHAP. XIV.

Of a Bochete.

A BOCHET *is the moſt profitable of the aforeſaid diet Drinks; otherwiſe uſeful in affections, in which Wine is not ſafely given, or where your ſcope is to dry leiſurely, and conſume the dreggs of humors.*

And it is (briefly) compounded, in diets of the reſidencie of your ſudorifical decoction; (ſo that no alterers or purgers have been boyled with it, as hath been above declared in the form of the ſudorifical diet-drink; otherwiſe it is to be preſcribed, and prepared of freſh ingredients) one ounce, or two ounces of the ſame, or ſome other ſudorifick being added over and above; let all be infuſed twelve hours in twelve pints of water, as above, ſole t them be boyled, onely to the conſumption of a third or fourth part; let them be ſtrained thorow an *Hippocras* bagg, and relliſh it with half a pound, or a pound of ſugar; or elſe ſeaſon it to your palate, and aromatize it with three drams, or half an ounce of *Cinnamom*, ſo make a

ſecond-

secondary Decoction or a *Bochete*, to be kept in glass bottles for your ordinary drink.

Or else 'tis made for present use, either in regard no diet-drink hath been prescribed before, out of whose residence this may be prepared (or because perhaps it was composed of other simples, both alterers and purgers, whose virtues are not needful in this kinde of ordinary drink,) then is it to be prepared of some one or more of the sudorificks, prescribed to two ounces, or two ounces and a half, after the same manner as is above-said; so make a *Bochete*, to be used as is said.

The USE, FORM, and UTILITY, are already sufficiently declared.

Chap. XV.

Of Cock-Broth.

THe reason of the name is plain; this was the invention of the Antients, and is much confirmed by the use and practise of late Physitians.

But this Decoction *of a* Cock *is a broth prepared either to alter or purge, of an old Cock, together with some certain sudorificks, and also alterers; and sometimes also purgers.*

From hence this sort of decoction is two-fold, *altering*, and *purging*.

The altering Cock-broth.

IN the altering broth are considered chiefly the *matter*, and the *Liquor*, and in both of them the *quality* and *quantity*.

As

As to the matter, in respect of its quality, an old COCK is taken (as it were) for the basis.

Then either his belly is filled with these following things, or else they are added neer the end of the decoction, and they are usually these sudorificks, as *China*, *Salsaparilla*, *Sassafras*, either alone, or mixed; in the *Asthma*, and *Hypochondriacal* melancholy they are chiefly prescribed: as also to them alterers, as Roots, Leaves, Seeds, Fruits, more or less.

As to the *quantity*, Sudorificks are prescribed to two ounces, but the alterers much like their quantity in the *altering Apozem*, or somewhat less.

The LIQUOR, as to the quality, is alwayes fair water.

As to the quantity, *q. s.*

The USE: as to the quantity, the dose is six or eight ounces.

As to the time, 'tis to be taken in the morning, continuing the use of it fifteen dayes, or the space of a moneth.

And this is the FORM, R. an old decrepit red Cock, or of four or five years old, that hath been tired with coursing, and beating; pul off his feathers whiles he is alive, then strangle him, and take out his bowels, let his belly be filled with the Sudorificks, fruits, and seeds as aforesaid, then sew it up, and boyl him in a glazed pot with a sufficient quantity of water, til the flesh be consumed, and wholly fal from the bones; but when the broth is scum'd, at first add the roots, *&c.* and towards the end of the decoction add the leaves and flowers, *&c.* boyl

them til there remains about three pints of broth, straine it, and presse it out strongly, and keep the decoction in a glass bottle, in a cold place, taking off all the fat when it is cold. Take of this broth from one pint to eight ounces in the morning, adding if you wil, especially in the affections of the breast sugar, or some fit syrup to an ounce, continuing it fifteen dayes, or the space of one moneth.

The UTILITY of it is much in stubborn obstructions; hence it is that it is generally prescribed in the hypochondriacal melancholy: for which purpose there is usually prescribed for this sort of broth the roots of *Parsley*, *Succory*, *Grass*, & *Sparagus*, the leaves of *Ceterach*, *Baume*, *Bugloss*, *Burnet*, *Agrimony*; Fruits, as *Coraus*, and sometimes *China*, and *Sassafras wood*: it is also used in any other durable obstructions of the intrals; as also in the affections of the breast, especially the Asthma; to which *China* is added, with fruits dedicated to the breast; and in arthritical pains with wood of Sassafras, and for paleness of the face, *&c.*

The purging Cock-broth.

IT differs not from the former, except that beside the aforesaid ingredients there are also added purgers, and for the most part these, of *Sennæ*, *Polypody*, *Carthamus*, *ana*, two ounces, or two ounces and a half, *Agarick* one ounce, as much *Epithymum*, which are shut up in the belly of the cock; and is prescribed to be made a decoction to two pints, in which dissolve (if you wil) four ounces of sugar, and to be aromatized, *&c.* for 4 morning doses thus to be used every moneth: And the hypochondriacal melancholy, obstructions of the

the bowels, Gout, and Cholick: but 'tis very seldom used for the Asthma, or difficulty of breath.

Chap. XVI.

Of the Restorative distilled liquor.

WHere the sick are extreamly weakned, either by the violence or length of the disease, or some extream evacuation, they very hardly digest any meat to repair their lost spirits, or else through nauseousness they refuse all; yet ought the strength both to be preserved and restored: wherefore the late Writers have invented a way to preserve them by liquors distilled out of flesh, that hath both good and much nourishment. This from the effect is called the distilled Restorative; *as also sometimes from the matter 'tis made of, they call it* Capon-water.

This DISTILLED RESTORATIVE, *distilled water, or Liquor thus drawn by a still, imbued with the nourishing virtue of the flesh (chiefly of Capons) and with the Medicinal virtues of divers conserves, powders, waters, and Juyces, is chiefly prepared to restore lost and decaying strength.*

And in this three things are to be considered, the *Composition, Use,* and *Utility.*

In the COMPOSITION two things chiefly, the matter of which 'tis made, and the things to be dissolved in it.

As to the MATTER, 'tis commonly the flesh of a Capon, or Hen, or else of two Partridges, cut in the middle, cleansed from the fat & bones, washed in some Cordial Liquor, as *Rose-water, white Wine, &c.* to this they take, & mingle with it divers Conserves, Preserves, Cordial powders [*to little purpose*] leaves of Gold, *&c.* and sprinkle all with a convenient Liquor, and distil it in *balneo Mariæ*: but because by this means the nourishing quality of the flesh is very small, or none, in the distilled water, and this manner also is reproved, the thing is to be more accurately performed; which wil be done if you boyl the afore. said flesh to a perfect pap, and thence strain forth the broth, and with it mix the aforesaid things, and distil them.

The *matter* of this sort of distillation is twofold, nourishing, and Medicinal; the nourishing matter, as to the quality, usually one Capon is chosen, (it may also be a Hen) and that either alone, or else one Partridg may be added, or a shank of veal; as also, if this distilled Liquor be prepared to restore one that is either hectical, or phthysical, there may be prescribed the flesh of a tortoise that lives in the woods, either one, or two; so the thighs of froggs are also prescribed.

This nutritive matter is boyled in *ſ. q.* of water, and (according to the medicinal quality required) divers parts of plants, (as they also use to do in altering broths,) as Roots, Leaves, Seeds, Flowers, *&c.* and for the most part those that are the most grateful in smel, and taste, and which do most respect the affection it self, the cause of that dissipation of the strength, and that neer the quan-

tity

tity they are prescribed for the altering Apozem, or somewhat less; by which means you see to the restoring of the strength, and the alteration that is to be made both together.

When all things are boyled to pap, so that the flesh fals from the bones, the broth is strained, and the relicks strongly prest forth: and when 'tis cooled, the fat that is congealed in the top of it is to be taken away.

And this broth the *neer matter* of the future distilled Liquor, which is to be prepared of three or four pints of it, and eight or ten ounces of some fit cordial waters, with which afterwards are mixed four, five, or six ounces of conserves, or fit Preserves, (and sometimes confections are taken, as Alchermes in the greatest weakness, and also Treacle, when there is malignity to three drams, or half an ounce) or the powders of cordial simples, or officinal electuaries, as *Diamargaritonfrigidum*, to half an ounce, or an ounce, where 'tis less pretious; and this is to be constantly noted, that Pearls, fragments of pretious hones, *bole Armoniack*, *terra sigillata*, and leaves of gold, are added in vain, because this gentle sort of distillation by *Balneo Mariæ* can draw no virtue or spiritual essence from them: seeing they will scarce part with any for a greater heat, and that in a dry stil, though they have been diligently prepared for it. The aforesaid things mixed are put into your glass body, & are afterwards distil'd in that manner which they cal *Balneo Mariæ*: Note also that if you desire the virtue of *Ambergreece*, or Musk, these to *gr.* 5, 6, or half a scruple, may be tied up in a thin linen rag, and so tyed to the snout of the

alembick, that the Liquor as it distils may pass thorow them, and take their virtues along with it, which in this manner are more certainly extracted than if you mixed them with the other things: this distilled Liquor is to be kept in a glass bottle in a cool place.

Things to be DISSOLVED (though seldom used) are sometimes prescribed (and are fit cordial juyces, as *Juyce of Limons*, Juyce of sowre *Pomgranats*,) and that profitably to three ounces, four ounces: according to the quantity of distilled liquor, although they may also be mixed with the broth and waters before distillation.

The *USE*: as to the *manner*, this sort of distilled liquor is either used alone of it self out of a spoon, or dissolved with other broths & *Panadaes*.

As to the *quantity*, one, two, or three ounces may be taken.

As to the time, when you please, and that 3 or 4 times a day, or oftner.

The FORM is, ℞ the flesh of one of the best Capons, or Hens, (or with other flesh as is said) slit in halves, and taken from the bones, or onely from the fat, put it into a pot glazed with *ſ. q.* of water, boyl them, towards the end adding the roots, *&c. i. e.* the alterers, when all are boyled to a pap, strain them, and press them hard; then having taken off the fat as aforesaid, take of this broth four pints, or five to which add *&c.* (*viz.* the conserves, *&c.* distil all in *B. M.* let the Liquor distilled be kept in a glass bottle in a cold place, of which let him take, *&c.* by it self out of a spoon, *&c.*

The

The UTILITY is the same with other Analeptick, or restoratives, *viz.* suddenly to restore, and (as it were) catch up the strength and spirits exhausted either by the length of the disease, famine, or over-much evacuation, to recreate the languishing condition of the principal parts; much used in many affections both of the heart, and other parts, not only in the hot, but also cold epidemical, malignant, and continual fevers, hecticks, and consumptions of the Lungs.

In fine, 'tis useful when the vigour of the parts extreamly languishing can digest no stronger forme of nourishment, and yet ought necessarily to be refected; from hence we conclude that these distill'd restoratives are rather to recruit the strength & spirits, than firmly to nourish the body.

CHAP. XVII.

Of Brothes:

BROTHS are also often prescribed by Physitians to this end, that by altering we may also nourish, and that the virtue of the Medicinal things might be the more eagerly received by the part themselves, under the form of nourishment, and thereby might be the less troublesom to them.

And these are either altering, or restorative.

Altering broths are made diversly, according to the scope of the Physitian, most frequently with a chick: As at *Montpelier they usually prescribe* the broth of a Chick alter'd with hepatical leaves, and roots, and also with cooling things in fevers: 'Tis not particularly prescribed by Physitians, on-

by commanded, let them use the broth of a Chick, alter'd with such leaves, &c. either 2, 3, or 4, in the morning, or else also in the evening; and this is most usual in hot diseases.

Restorative broths prepared to restore lost strength, which are otherwise (from this manner of working, and from the consumption *wherein they are much used*) called *Consumption broths*: these are made of a fat Hen or Capon, (the bowels taken out) cut in pieces, boiled in a glazed pot, or an alembeck close stopped, (lest any thing breath forth,) to a perfect paps these are all strained, and the juyce pressed forth. Lastly, (when it is cold) the fat taken clear off; and this Liquor is kept in a glass bottle for your use in a cold place: in this broth sometimes other things are dissolved, *viz*: in each pound of it three ounces of white-Wine, (if your scope require it) or other cordial liquor, two ounces of Sugar, one dram of Cinnamom, and confection Alchermes; let them warm til the sugar be dissolved, then strain them, and keep them for your use. They labour in vain, which only for vain-glory add to these Consumption broths, the *leaves of gold, for they do no good.*

The USE is the same with the distilled restorative.

And the UTILITY is also the same, only these *Consumption broths* are great nourishers, and restore and nourish the solid substance of the body.

THE

THE SECOND SECTION Of the First Book: OF THE SOFT FORMS OF MEDICINES.

CHAP. I.
Of a Bole:

A BOLE *is a form of Medicine, almost of the consistencie of Hony, or somewhat thicker, prepared either to alter or purge; and because it is a bit of a Medicine, as much as the mouth can wel contain, therefore it hath its name.*

A Bole is three-fold, viz. *purging, altering, and strengthening.*

A PURGING BOLE.

WHat *a purging* Bole *is, and what are his differences taken from the variety of humors that are to be purged, may appear by what hath been said before in the Apozem.*

But in it three things are to be considered, the *Composition, Use,* and *Utility.*

In the COMPOSITION, chiefly the matter of which 'tis made; in which there is to be considered its quality, and quantity.

As

As to the *quality* of the MATTER, in general 'tis composed of purgers both simple and compound, as any purging powder, both simple and compound, and sugar.

As to the quantity in general, a bole ought not to exceed six drams, or 1 ounce, seldom 10 drams, unless it consist of the gentlest sort of purgers.

But in special, a purging bole, as to the *matter*, is composed,

1. Either of *Cassia* alone, which is most commonly the *basis* of a bole. (or also pulp of tamarinds, especially in the cholerick,) though 'tis better to have it of *Cassia*, and some other purger together, that its purging quality might be acuated, which else is only lenitying; lest otherwise by staying too long in the intrals it might overslacken them: and then as to the *quantity*, there is prescribed half an ounce or six drams of *Cassia*; but of the purging opiate, or tablet, two drams, or three drams, more or less, examining the doses by that caution before noted; that if two or three be mingled with the *Cassia*, the compleat dose of all might be found out.

Note, that 'tis commonly used in the affections of the reins and bladder, to prescribe a bole of the aforesaid *Cassia*, as the basis to six drams, to which add two drams of *Turpentine* washed in violet, or pellitory water, with a sufficient quantity of powder of liquorice and sugar: to which purpose also *Turpentine* alone is prescribed, & sometimes with a scruple of *Rheubarb* added to it, as is hereafter setdown.

2. Or of the purging officinal opiate; which is either prescribed alone in that quantity which hath

hath been before in the potion, and shal hereafter be defined; or else together with it is added a purging tablet, or solid electuary in that proportion, that all together may make up the compleat dose, yet should the opiate somewhat exceed the others.

Note, that sometimes, either to these two joyned, or to the opiate alone is added some purging powder, and that either simple, as the powder of *Rrheubarb, Mechoachan*, &c. from half a scruple to half a dram, or compound, as of *diaturbith*, from half a scruple to a scruple, according to the quantity the other things are prescribed in; or else sometimes not purgative, but either directing or correcting, or strenghening, to half a scruple.

3. Or else of a tablet or solid electuary, either alone, in the dose aforesaid in the potion, and hereafter to be set down, with some syrup or Sugar, or sometimes an opiate being added, or a purging powder, as aforesaid.

4. Or, which is very seldome of a powder onely, either simple or compound, made up with a syrup or sugar, but this manner is lesse used.

5. Or else (which hardly deserves the name of a purging bole, yet is used in affections of the reins) of Turpentine washed in violet water, &c. to two drams or three drams, with a scruple of the powder of Liquorice.

The USE, as to the *manner*, 'tis taken by swallowing it down, which is easiest done out of a spoon, with some syrup that is gratefull to the taste.

As to the *quantity*, 'tis above defined.

The *time* is in the morning after the manner of other catarrticks.

The

The FORM of PRESCRIBING, when *Caſſia* onely is taken, is, Rx. take the marrow of *Caſſia* newly drawn, and (ſometimes 'tis added) by the vapour of ſome decoction, as of *Barly*, *Liquorice*, *Mallows*, for the Reins) or elſe 'tis ſaid, the pulp or flour of *Caſſia*, *&c.* make a bole with Sugar.

If of an Opiate, Rx &c. with Sugar make it a bole.

But when a bole is made of the drier things, as tablets, and powders, ſo that they can hardly ſtick together in the form of a bole, Rx *&c.* let them be moiſtened with ſuch a ſyrup, then with Sugar reduce them into the form of a bole, which let him take *&c.* but when the bole is made of *Turpentine*, Rx *Turpentine* waſhed, *&c.* make a bole, let each bit be wrapped in Wafers, ſo take them out of a ſpoon, with a convenient Syrup, as of *Maiden hair*, *Violets*, &c. let them be ſwallowed down in the morning three or four hours before dinner, and that uſually for three dayes together.

The UTILITY is the ſame with that of a potion, *viz.* when the cauſe of the affection is in the inferior region, or the parts adjacent; but a bole of *Caſſia* is particularly profitable in the reins and bladder, in which we ſhould deal very gently, and onely leniſie.

The ſtrengthening bole.

IN it three things are to be conſidered, the *compoſition*, *uſe*, and *utility*.

As to the COMPOSITION, in reſpect of its quality, it is prepared

1. Either

1. Either of officinall conserves, and a powder, which is either the *Species* of some Electuary of the shops, or other aromaticall powder, as of Cinnamom, *&c.* with Sugar.

Note, that sometimes with the aforesaid conserves are also taken cordiall confections, as alchermes, *& de hyacintho.*

2. or of some strengthening officinall confection alone.

As to the *quantity*, this bole in *generall* seldom exceeds three drams, or half an ounce.

In speciall, the quantities and dose *of the first sort* of these boles is this; as of conserves let there be three drams, half an ounce, & powders a Scruple.

Of confections (if added) one scruple, or half a dram.

But of the second sort, *viz.* the confection, is prescribed from a dram, to a dram and half.

The USE, as to the time; it useth to be prescribed, the day after a purging Medicine, two hours before dinner, or otherwise at any other convenient hour, simply to strengthen, without any purge preceding it.

As to the *manner*, 'tis to be swallowed out of a spoon (if you will) with syrup, drinking after it a little wine diluted, or other liquor fit for the purpose.

The FORM; R. *&c.* make it a bole with *Sugar*, which let him take &c.

The *Utility* sufficiently appears in its name; see also the cordiall potion; but most usually they are prescribed after purging medicines, to comfort the stomack and parts afflicted by them, as also by the violence of diseases, and also simply to strengthen,

without

without Relation to any preceding Purgation, as often as the ſtrength (growing weak, or feeble by any other cauſe) requires it, as alſo to alter, together with the ſtrengthening: ſo alſo this ſort of boles are uſed againſt fluxes of the belly.

Chap. II.

Of Opiates.

The Ancients called thoſe medicines which had in their compoſition either *opium* or other narcoticks, by the proper name of opiates, but now adayes we abuſively and improperly call thoſe medicines opiates, which are without *opium*, whether to ſtrengthen, alter, or purge, onely for the conſiſtency wherein they are made, like Treacle, and other Opiates of like ſort.

They otherwiſe call them more rightly, Electuaries, which now are in uſe twofold; the ſolid, which is otherwiſe called a tablet, or the ſoft, otherwiſe called an Opiate; both theſe were by the Greeks called antidotes, yet this name extends not to include the purgers, as our appellation of Opiates.

But an Opiate is a medicine of a thicker ſubſtance than a ſyrup, ſcarce running abroad (like that true Opiate treacle) prepared of divers things, mixed in honey or ſyrup, to keep long either to purge, alter, or ſtrengthen.

Hence, 'tis twofold, purging, and altering, or corroborating.

The

The purging Opiate.

WHat it is (& its differences) may be sought in the purging Apozem and potion.

Here I shall at present account it twofold, Magisteriall, and officinall.

What a Magisteriall is, see in the purging syrup.

Nevertheless three things are to be considered, the composition, use, and Utility.

As to the COMPOSITION, 'tis prepared,

1. Either of powders onely taken in syrup, or hony, or both together.

These powders are every where chosen out of purging Simples (and sometimes may be in use the spices of purging Electuaries) together with their fit correctors, both Simples, and compounds, as also their directors.

As to the *quantity*, these sorts of purging powders ought to be prescribed, according to the number of doses for which you desire or intend your Opiate; as if you desire an Opiate for six times, you must prescribe six doses of purgers in substance, adding also their correctors; as to the *quantity* of that they are made up withall, they usually, though ill prescribe it, *q.s.* as is before noted in the purging syrup; for as it is there said, the quantity of these is also to be defined, and its proportion ought to be three or four times the weight of the powder, and that expressly to be set down, that you may be certain of the dose.

Note also, that when *Cassia* or other things which have the consistency of hony, are added, they are to be accounted instead of so much hony.

2. Of

2. Or seeing that now they are very seldom made of powders onely, they are usually prescribed of officinall purging opiates, *Cassia* being also added, where we would purge more gently; or else there is also added a solid purging Electuary of the shops, together with a purging powder, and their correctors; all which are to be taken in a convenient syrup:

And this is their proportion.

To an ounce of opiate you may adde a dram or two drams at most of a purging powder.

But for the most part, four ounces of these sorts of Opiates are required, and then the dose of the syrup is not defined, for there is need but of very little.

3. Or onely of the softer sort of purging simples, as *Cassia*, *tamarinds*, *manna*, *pulp of prunes*, *raisins*, or *Sebestens*, with their correctives, when you would onely lenifie; and if you would yet purge more, you may adde the simple purging powders in the proportion aforesaid.

4. Or else with all these together, as the lenifying Simples, officinall Electuaries, purging Powders, together with the aforesaid proportion of syrup.

The more usuall Officinall Opiates.

Catholicon, all humours.
Diacassia, chol. mel.
Diaprun. simpl. chol.
Diasenna, or Elect. lenitivum, melanch.
Hiera picra, phlegm. & choler, and all humours that are easily moved.
Diaprun. solutive, chol.
Elect. de Psillio: phleg. mel.

Dia-

Diaphœnicon. phlegm. & chol.
Benedicta laxativa. phleg: and watrish humours.
Confectio hamech. chol. melanchol.

The less usual, are:

Elect: rosarum Mesues, purgeth choler.
Triphera persica, chol: mel.
Indum majus, phleg. chol.
Hiera Pachii, phlegm.

The use of the officinal Opiate.

AS to the manner, they are taken either by themselves, as a *Bole*, or else with a fit Liquor dissolved in the form of a potion, see before.

As to the time, 'tis in the morning, as other Cathartick's.

As to the quantity or dose, 'tis this.

	Dose the least.	moderate,	highest.
Diasebesten, to	dra. 6,	ou. 1 & half,	ounces 2
Diaprun-simpl.	oun. 1,	ou. 1 & half	ounces 2
Dia prun. solut.	ou. half	drams 6	ounce 1
Elect. rosar. mes.	ou. half	dram 6	ounce 1
Elect. de Psillio.	ou. half	drams 6,	ounce 1
Diacatholic.	dra. 6,	drams 10	ounces 2
Triphera Persic.	oun. 1,	ou. 1 & half,	ounces 2
Diaphœnicon.	dra. 2,	drams 3	drams 6
Indum minus,	dra. 2,	drams 3,	dra. 5, scr: 2
or	dr. 2. h.	dra: 3, scr. 2	drams 7
Benedict. laxativ.	scru. 4,	dr. 2 & half	oun. ß. scr. ß. or drams 5.

The USE of the MAGISTERIALL Opiate.

As to the *manner* and *time* of using, 'tis as the Officinal.

As to the quantity in general, 'tis also as the officinal; but in special it cannot be defined, unless

(as is aforesaid) by computing the doses, and by the weight of the whole purging opiate; for the whole masse is to be divided into so many parts, as there be purging doses in the whole composition.

The FORM *of* PRESCRIBING.

℞ &c. with a Syrup or honey, *q.s.* (which nevertheless is to be set down precisely, that you may be certain of the dose) either to three or four times the weight of the other things, so make an Opiate, of which let him take, &c. either by it self, in the form of a Bole, or else dissolve it in broth, decoction, or some other fit liquor, and that every fifth day, having taken a Clyster the day before.

The *UTILITY* is the same with that of the purging Syrup, only as the Syrup is used in Summer, so this in Winter; but the profit of it is, that it may by little and little draw away vitious humors, that are heaped, or are abounding in us, at certain distances of time; and that we may not suffer ill humors to encrease so far, as to produce a disease; therefore 'tis very useful for Cacochimical natures: and where through the ill complexion, or temper of the intrals, they use to gather many excrementitious humors, from whence comes the original and durability of diseases.

And seeing, of these, one is only lenifying, another purging particularly; The first is usually prescribed, for affections of the Reins, Bladder, and Brest, and also to move the belly, and against the heat of the Liver, and consists for the most

moſt part, of the *Pulp of Caſſia, Tamarinds, Prunes, Sebeſtens, Manna*, &c. with fit altering powders: Here is to be noted, that this form of medicine is chiefly to be uſed in them whoſe Liver is heated, which with the uſe of pils would be more inflamed.

The ſtrengthening Opiat.

Beſide the lenifying and purging Opiates, others uſe alſo to be new preſcribed by the Phyſitian, for the preſent uſe, not only to ſtrengthen, and confirm the vigor, and reſtore the ſpirits, as aforeſaid in the corroborating potion, but alſo to alter the body in any manner, in firſt, ſecond, or third qualities.

In a ſtrengthening Opiate, three things are to be conſidered, *Compoſition*, *Wſe*, and *Utility*.

And in the *COMPOSITION*, two things chiefly; the *Matter*, and the *Form-Giver*; and in both, their *quality*, and *quantity*.

The *Matter*, in relation to its *quality*, is either *moyſt* or *dry*; the *moyſt* is ſome officinal conſerve, of which, as its baſis, a ſtrengthening Opiat is compounded.

To this is ſometimes added, according to the ſcope, ſome officinal preſerve, as of roots, ſtalks, fruits, barks.

And if occaſion require, Confections, as *Alchermes, Conſect. de hyacintho*; alſo *Treacle*, *Mithridate*, &c.

The *dry*, which is alwayes joyned with the Conſerve, is ſome ſtrengthening powder, either ſimple of Spices, or ſome other ſtrengthening proper things; or compound, of ſome ſtrengthening Electuaries, as of *Aromaticum Roſatum*.

As to its quantity, because the whole composition of a strengthening Opiate should not exceed six ounces, or seven ounces of the aforesaid things, this is to be their proportion,

Of Conserves four ounces.

Of preserves if admitted an ounce and a halfe or two ounces.

Confections if added 2 drams, 3 drams, or half an ounce.

But the proportion of powders in respect of the things aforesaid should be so that an ounce of them should contain a dram, a dram and half, or two drams of powders at the most, according to the efficacy, or as you desire the Opiate more or less powerful, or according as the powder is more or less pretious.

The *FORM-GIVER*, or that which gives it the consistence, as to its *quality*, is some proper officinal Syrup, or the Syrup of some appropriate preserve:

As to its *quantity*, 'tis seldome expressed, only is set down, *q.s.* yet (as is aforesaid in the purging Opiate, where 'tis to be three or four times so much as the powder,) it may easily be defined; *yet 'tis not here to be limited by that proportion, in regard of the Conserves, which helps to the giving the form.*

Here is to be diligently marked, that when the aforesaid matter is prescribed, this order should be kept: 1. The Conserves. 2. The Preserves. 3. The Confections. 4. The Powders: and lastly, the Syrup is to be prescribed, and also Ambergreece, and Musk, are usually added to some few grains, and when condited Mirobalans, and Nutmegs are joyned, they are usually prescribed by

by number, as one, two, &c. or elſe half an ounce, or an ounce, &c.

The *Uſe*, as to the *manner*, 'tis taken in the form of a Bole, and then (if you deſire it, and the ſcope of the Phyſitian can admit it) drinking after it a ſmal quantity of wine, or ſome other liquor, according to the intention proſecuted, that nothing might ſtay behind in the jawes or gullet, and that it might be the eaſier carried down into the ſtomack.

As to the *quantity*, the doſe is two drams, three drams, or half an ounce, more or leſſe, according as it is ſtronger or weaker from the quality or quantity of the powders, or confections joyned with it, otherwiſe 'tis preſcribed to be taken to the quantity of a Filberd or Cheſnut, according to its faculty in operation.

As to the *time*, 'tis generally preſcribed an hour or two before dinner, if the ſtomack or other intrals are to be ſtrengthened, and that every other day in which he abſtains from theſe uſual pills; for theſe two, the uſual pills, and ſtrengthening Opiates, are ſucceſſefully preſcribed to be taken after one another in Cacochimical bodies, where the intrals are alſo diſtempered; it may be uſed twice in a day, as before ſupper alſo, when there is a greater neceſſity of comforting: in affections of the head, they are taken to very good purpoſe after dinner, and ſupper, for ſo with the ſumings of the meat, the virtues and ſpirits of the medicines are together eaſily elevated; but if it be not ſtrengthening, but only altering, or evacuating by urine, or the courſes, or to open obſtructions, or for other the like inventions, let it be preſcribed when the ſtomack is empty, that the vertue of it

may not be dulled, therefore let it be taken long before meat.

The *FORM* of *prescribing*; ℞ &c. with the Syrup, &c. make an Opiate, of which let him take, &c. *i. e.* to two drams, or three drams, or to the bigneſſe of a Filberd or Chefnut, an hour before dinner, &c. drinking after it a little, &c.

The *VTILITY* is much to reſtore ſtrength to the parts weakened, or afflicted, and to preſerve them, when there is need of a continued corroboration in chronical diſeaſes, in which together with theſe the uſual Pils are preſcribed, then the uſe of this and them by turns is appointed. They are done alſo to alter divers wayes, (as is ſaid) divers parts, and divers affections, ariſing from unlike humors, both in firſt, ſecond, and third qualities; alſo to purge by urine, open obſtructions, provoke the courſes, break and force out the ſtone, &c. or where any malignant quality is to be prevented, or taken away.

CHAP. III.

Of Lohochs, or licking Medicines.

THat which the *Arabians* call *Loch*, or *Lohoch*, and the *Greeks Eclegma*, from *Ecleicho*, to lick, the Latines call *Linctus*, the name in all being taken from licking them by little and little,

little, the manner of taking them.

It is a medicine of the thicknesse of honey, mean between the consistence of a Syrup and an opiate, composed of divers thoracical simples, destined to divers affections of the Wind-pipe, Lungs, and Brest, which retained in the mouth, & melting by little & little, with its smoothing slipperinesse imparts its Cough-curing vertue to those parts; and this is twofold, Officinal, and Magisterial.

The Officinal Lohoch or Lincture, is either	heating,	*Sanum & expertum:*
	cutting,	*De pineis:*
	cleansing,	*De farfara:*
		Of Coleworts:
		Of Fox lungs:
		Of Squills, simple and compound:
	cooling,	*De Papavere:*
	thickning	*De Psillio:*

In the Magisterial, three things are considered, *Composition*, *Use*, and *Utility*.

As to the *Composition*, 'tis various.

1. It is compounded of powders taken in a liquor, or rather honeyish substance, and made in the form of an opiate.

These powders, in relation to their quality, are appropriated to the lungs, fit for the purpose, and those either simple, as the roots, leaves seeds, dried juices, of bechical or cough-curing simples, or else of some thoracical electuaries, as species diaireos, either alone, or mixed, to which often (if the scope permit) are added sugar or penidies.

As to the quantity, they are most commonly prescribed to one ounce, with four times the quantity of the liquor they are made up withal, so that a Lohoch seldome exceeds three ounces, or four ounces.

That in which these powders ars taken, in relation to its *quality*, is usually some fit Syrup, sometimes honey or sape, called also cute, the muscilage of some convenient gums or seeds, sweet wine, &c. as the indication requires; but most usually they are made up with a Syrup.

As to the quantity, 'tis not expressed, but said *s. q.* yet it may be defined, that the Syrup may be four times, or five times, the weight of the other; for a lohoch or linctur ought to be thinner than an opiate or electuary.

2. Or else 'tis made of a decoction impregnated with the virtues of fit bechical simples, but chiefly of leaves, fruits, and flowers, thickened with muscilage, sugar, or somthing equivalent, as honey, cute, adding to them also fit powders.

As to the drawing of that muscilage; first the decoction shall be described of thoracical things, that are by their own nature muscilaginous; by this order, that there may be of roots two or three ounces, of leaves four or five handful, of the greater sort of fruits, pairs 18. of the lesser sorts pairs, 20. 24: one ounces and an half, of seeds one ounce, or an ounce and an half, so make a decoction till all be pap, then presse all strongly out of a presse, with a new strainer, so drive them thorow.

There is taken of this muscilage one quartern (for that will be enough) and therefore the ingredients of the decoction are to be prescribed, for

for the making it in a leſſe quantity, for that which is ſet down will afford a pound. To this muſcilage is added one ounce, or an ounce and half of ſugar only; or over and above, the powder of ſome electuary, or other fit things, from half an ounce to an ounce, more or leſs, according to the conſiſtence of the muſcilage.

3. Or of the pulp of fruits, as an ounce of the powders to ſix ounces of the pulp, with Syrup, *ſ. q.*

4. Or of ſome officinal Lohoch, to one or two ounces, to which you may add two or three ounces of powder, with Syrup, *ſ. q.*

5. Or of thoracical fruits, ſeeds, and juices, beaten all together, and forced through a haire ſtrainer, taken with ſyrup, honey, muſcilage, according to your intention; in this proportion, that there may be of fruits two ounces; of ſeeds an ounce; juices half an ounce; ſyrup; *ſ. q.* And note, that a powder may alſo ſomtimes be added.

6. Or which is moſt uſual, a ſingle pectoral Syrup may be preſcribed for a lohoch, to four or ſix ounces, to which you may, if you will, add ſome fit powders in the proportion aforeſaid.

7. Or elſe, (and that chiefly in thoſe that are phthiſical) of aſtringent conſerves to two ounces and divers powders to ſix drams, or an ounce ſyrup, *ſ. q.* yet a greater quantity of theſe may be preſcribed, becauſe the uſe of them ought to be frequent and daily.

Note alſo, that ſometimes 'tis preſcribed of butter, with twice ſo much ſugar or honey, in the cough and roughneſſe of the windpipe, to which are ſomtimes added three drams of powder, with *ſ. q.* of ſyrup; and evermore in cleanſing a cold matter, an ounce of Turpentine may be joyned;

or

or in its place, *Oyle of sweet Almonds* an ounce, in the Pleurisie and Phthisick.

The *USE* of the officinal; as to the *manner*, if a syrup only be prescribed, it is said, let him take of this often out of a spoon, licking it leisurely; but if it be a compound Lohoch, let him take it from a Licorice stick, bruised at the end, licking gently and frequently.

As to the *quantity*, a Lohoch should not exceed three ounces, four ounces, or six ounces, unlesse it be prescribed for them that live remote, then it may be made to a pound and half, and if it be often to be used, you may exceed that quantity; as also when it is prescribed for the Phthisis: The particular dose is about a spoonful, or as much as a liquorish stick bruised can take up: as to the divided quantity, 'tis to be taken often, except Lohoch de Papavere, which is to be taken only once a day, when the time of sleep is.

As to the *time*, let it be some distance from meat, either before or after it, or at any time, if necessity requires.

The USE *of the Magisterial is the same.*

The *FORM* is, Rx *&c.* Make a Lohoch, which let the Patient (holding his head a little lifted up, or leaning forward, that the epiglottis which covers the wind-pipe might open a little) use with a Liquorice stick *&c.* or out of a spoon.

The *Utility*: they are prescribed only in the affections of the Lungs and breasts, as in the Asthma, Cough, *&c.* Catarrhs, and faults in the wind-pipe; so that now adayes they are prescribed; only

only to lenifie the asperity of it, arising either from the acrimony of the humors, or otherwise composed of bechical things that are both sweet and sharp: and in cleansing the clammy, of things that are sweet and bitter; but these must be smal in quantity: or else to stay Rheums falling into the breast, or to thicken thin rheumes, of clammy muscilaginous things; or else to bind in the spitting of blood, of healing things; as also in drying up the Ulcers of the Lungs; but do this with caution, for it stops the way by which the breath is drawn, and 'tis very necessary to have an easie clear breathing to maintaine life.

CHAP. IV.

Of Candied Confections.

THis is an invention of late Writers, so called, because of the similitude it hath with the candying of flowers in sugar.

And it is a pleasant medicine, of a mean form, between electuaries and powders, made of divers strengtheners, to preserve the vigor of the principal parts, and restore strength decayed.

In it three things are considerable, the *Composition*, *Use*, and *Utility*.

As to the *Composition*, in respect of the *quality*, of conserves, as the basis, to which are somtimes

added

added cordial confections, but alwayes a cordial powder and sugar.

As to the conserves, in respect of their quality, they are chosen strengtheners, and cordials, and such as are sweet; as also divers preserved fruits and roots, which are esteemed as the same thing; in respect of their quantity, three ounces will suffice.

If a confection be taken, it should be in *quality* cordial, as Alchermes chiefly, because of its pleasantnesse; and the *quantity* of it from a dram to two drams.

A powder, in respect of its *quality*, should be also cordial and strengthening, and that either simple, as of *pearls*, and fragments of *precious stones*, &c. or the seeds of cordial simples, or compound of electuaries; to which for the richer sort you may add Ambergreece: As to the quantity of the powder, for every ounce of conserves, let there be one dram, or four handfuls of powder at most.

Either white sugar, or sugar of roses in Tabulets, and that double or treble to the other things *is taken to make it into a confection*, or else is prescribed, *s. q.*

To these may be added also leaves of gold, in number six, but more for ornament than any virtue comes from them.

The *USE*: as to the *manner*, it is either taken by it self, or dissolved in a convenient liquor, or some simple water or other, or in a Julep wine, or broth.

As to the *quantity*, 'tis taken to a spoonful, or a spoonful and an half, or two.

As to the *time*, if it be for strengthening the

the animal faculty, 'tis best after meat, or at going to sleep; if for the vital, at any time, when need requires; for the natural, either before, with, or after meat.

The *Utility*, is to preserve the vigor of the principal parts, to restore the strength wasted by diseases: Hence it is that the use of these candied confections is wholly restorative, rather helping nature and the strength, than regarding the disease, which nevertheless is not to be neglected; therefore these candied confections are made heating, cooling, binding, &c. the use of them is frequent in the hypochondriacal affection, panting of the heart, consumption of the lungs, weakness of the stomack and liver, &c.

THE

THE THIRD SECTION Of the First Book. OF THE SOLID FORMES OF MEDICINES.

CHAP. I.

Of Paste-royal, and morsels.

THere is also an invention of modern Writers, which in consistence resembles Pineolates, or Paste of Pine kernels, made of divers things, wrought together like paste, (from whence its name) and of sugar dissolved in some convenient liquor, and boiled to the height of Tabulets; this is made into boles or morsels, like Conserves of Roses dried, (hence it is called morsels) which being leisurely dried are kept for use, and are somtimes gilded; and this is called Paste-Royal, for the Soveraign virtues it hath in affections of the breast, lungs, and in extenuated bodies.

In

In this also three things are to be noted, *Composition*, *Use*, and *Utility*.

As to the *Composition*, 'tis made two wayes.

1. Either without the flesh of living creatures, (as shall be said) of bechical fruits and seeds only, and sugar.

These fruits are for the most part *blanched Almonds*, washed, soaked, and bruised; the kernels of *Pistaches*, and *pine nuts*, washed also in a fit water, as of *violets*, or *roses*.

They are usually prescribed to the quantity of four ounces.

The seeds are the four greater cold seeds usually, huld and bruised, to which (when sleep is to be provoked) the seeds of white poppy and lettice are added.

Let these be prescribed to the quantity of two ounces, or two ounces and an half.

The sugar is to be chosen white, dissolved in a fit liquor; the quantity of it is usually set down *q: s.* yet it should usually be double the proportion of the rest.

2. Or else this paste is made restorative, with the flesh of the tortoses of the wood, washed and boyl'd in barley water, the head and tail being left out; and this is afterwards called Testudinate paste, or paste of Tortoses; or with the flesh of Crawfish, Capons, and Partridges, or else to these are added the fruits aforesaid, seeds and powders mentioned in the Candies, and sugar dissolved in Rosewater, usually in this proportion;

Of

Of fleſh, three or four ounces.
Fruits, three ounces.
Seeds one ounce, an ounce and half.

And let one dram of powders anſwer to every ounce of the reſt, and of thoſe that are precious a leſſe quantity.

Sugar is mentioned, *q. ſ.*

Somtimes Ambergreece and Musk are added in ſmall quantity to ſome few grains; ſomtimes alſo the paſte is covered over with leaf gold.

The *USE*: the manner, is either by it ſelf, or in broth.

The Doſe, or united quantity, is to half an ounce, or an ounce, the morſels in numb. one or two.

The divided quantity; 'tis to be taken often with meat, and in your meals.

The time is expreſſed.

The *FORME*, R &c. make a confection in morſels, and ſomtimes 'tis added like pinocolate, ſo let it be uſed.

The *UTILITY*; the paſte that is not nouriſhing is good for divers affections of the lungs and breſt, to incraſſate, lenifie, cleanſe, or expectorate; &c: but the reſtorative paſte, both in the ſame, and the conſumption, for them that are extenuated and weakened by the ulcer of the lungs, it nouriſheth, drieth, and thickneth rheumes; therefore the uſe is wholly reſtorative, regarding alſo the affections from whence that lack of nouriſhment, and dejection of the ſtrength proceeds.

CHAP.

CHAP. II.

Of a Pandaleon.

THis invention of the *Arabians*, and latter Physitians, is a medicine dedicated to the breast and lungs, made of pleasant ingredients, agreeing with the Lohoch to the same purpose, differing only in form, in which it resembles Tablets: From them also it differs in this, because they are made up in a certain shape; but this (when the sugar is sufficiently boiled, and the ingredients mixed with it) is poured into a box, and there suffered to harden, and at the time of using it, a bit is taken out with a knife or spoon, &c.

Therefore it is a medicine solid, like Tablets, kept in a box like a cake, made of powders, bechical conserves, and sugar dissolved and made into a Tablet, consistence appointed for the same uses as Lohochs are.

And in it three things are to be noted, *Composition, Use* and *Utility*.

The *COMPOSITION* is two wayes.

1. Either of bechical powders, simple or compound, severall or mixed, and sugar dissolved in a fit liquor boiled, in or neer this proportion, that to half an ounce of the powder there may be four ounces of sugar dissolved, or else q. s.

2. Or of thoracical fruits and seeds, powders of electuaries, sugar dissolved, after these proportions.

Of fruits two drams, ſeeds an ounce, powders three drams, ſugar *q. ſ.* Note that conſerves may ſomtimes be added to three drams, or half an ounce.

The *USE*; the *manner* is to contain it in the mouth, that it may leiſurely melt, and may gently be ſwallowed down, and uſed frequently.

The *quantity*; let a bit of this be taken from a ſpoon, or the point of a knife.

The *time* is the ſame with that of the Lohochs.

The *FORM*: R &c. make a *Pandaleon* in a convenient box, of which, &c.

The *VIILITY* is the ſame with that of the Lohochs, from which this differs only in form, and that this for the moſt part conſiſts of the pleaſanteſt things.

CHAP. III.

Of Marchpane and Pineolates.

Marchpane is a moſt pleaſant confection of latter writers, nouriſhing much, convenient for people that are leane, and for affections of the lungs, inſtead of ſweet meats.

'Tis compounded of blanched Almonds, three ounces Piſtaches cleanſed, one ounce ſtamped in a marble mortar, with a little roſe-

water

water, adding half a pound of white sugar, make a paste, which make into little cakes, to be baked gently in an oven, till they begin to be coloured yellow, and are a little hardened; other pleasant things may also be added, as Cinnamom, &c.

A *PINEOLATE* is made to the same end, of equal parts of pine kernels, and sugar dissolved, of which are made morsels, adding musk for the better grace, if you will; but this is to be injoyned by the Physitian, not else to be usually prescribed.

CHAP. IV.

Of Tablets.

That which they were wont to call the solid electuary, is otherwise called from its flat shape, a Tablet, and because the sugar of which they are made when it is boiled and flatted is cut into divers figures; when square they were called Tessellæ (i. e. little dies) and Lozenges, commonly by the Apothecaries; or else when they were made round, in the fashion of Manus Christi, they were called Rotulets, and Orbicles, from the roundity of their figure.

It is a solid medicine, chiefly of sugar dissolved, and a powder, boiled to a higher consistence than syrup, and drawn into a flat board, as it were, prepared either to alter or purge.

Therefore Tablets are twofold, purging and altering.

The purging Tablets.

The diſtinction and difference is as above, yet are theſe twofold, officinal and magiſterial, of which here chiefly.

In the magiſterial Tablet three things are to be conſidered, *Compoſition*, *Uſe*, and *Utility*.

As to the *COMPOSITION*, they are made of powders, and ſugar diſſolved in a convenient liquor, boiled beyond the conſiſtency of a ſyrup; and ſomtimes purging Tablets, and the ſpecies of purging Tablets are added.

The powder is either purgative, or altering, *viz.* ſome fit correcting ſpice, or the ſpecies of ſome electuary.

As to the *quantity*, the doſes of the purging ingredients are to be computed as is aforeſaid in the purging opiate; whatſoever they are (becauſe the whole compoſition ſhould not exceed four ounces, or ſix) 'twill ſuffice to preſcribe one ounce of powder, and three or four times ſo much ſugar diſſolved, though commonly they do not ſet down the quantity, the which is very ill.

The *USE*; as to the *manner*, 'tis either taken by it ſelf, or diſſolved in ſome convenient liquor: See the potions.

As to the *Doſe*, ſee the purging opiate.

As to the *time*, in the morning, as other purger.

The *FORM*; R &c. with, &c. of ſugar diſſolved in a convenient liquor, make Tablets of the weight of three drams, or half an ounce; let him take, &c.

The

The *Utility* is the same with that of the opiate, *viz.* to purge withal; *& being under a diverse form from electuaries, it is a meaus to avoid that nauseousness which the often giving one medicine will procure; and besides, 'tis a neat way to deceive the curious palated; for thus the purgers are concealed, and they eat Physick instead of sweet meats.*

The strengthening Tablets.

What they are, and their differences, see in the cordial potion.

As to the *COMPOSITION*, 'tis made of divers sorts of strengthening powders, either simple, as of some spice, or other proper things, or compound, of some officinal electuary, and sugar dissolved in a fit liquor, that the whole mass may not exceed six ounces, by this proportion of each several.

Of powders let there be one part.

Of sugar six, or eight, or ten parts, according as you desire your Tablets stronger or weaker, or as the powders are more pleasant or unpleasant, effectual or otherwise, more or lesse, though the sugar be only said, *q. s.* the dose of powders is alwayes expressed, and that usually to five or six drams.

Note, that to these powders is very conveniently added sometimes a confection, as Alchermes to two drams, of which alone at *Montpellier* they make most pleasant Tablets, and sometimes they add fit conserves, to three drams.

To these strengthening Tablets may be refer'd those which are prepar'd of divers things, (without cordials) only to alter, according to

the scope of the Physitian, powdred and made up in the same manner with sugar, and in the same dose, yet may they be prescribed in a greater, adding only three times the weight of sugar, of which sort there are divers extant in the shops, serving to the various scope of the Physitian.

The *USe of the strengtheners*; as to the *manner*, they are used chiefly by themselves, or dissolved in some fit liquor.

As to the *quantity*, from one dram to three drams, according to the efficacy of the ingredients.

As to the time, three hours before dinner, or also before supper; and that the day after purging, if it hath preceded; or if the usual pills are prescribed, then are they to be taken by turns every other day; or otherwise where you will simply strengthen, they may be used at any time.

The *USE* of alterers, as to the manner, is the same.

As to the *quantity*, one dram, two drams, or three drams, according to the faculties of the powders, and the scope.

As to the *time*, that the nature of the affection must limit, yet 'tis usually taken with an empty stomack.

The *USE* of the officinal Tablets, as to the *manner*, *time*, and *quantity*, is the same.

The form of prescribing, ℞ &c. with *s. q.* of sugar dissolved in, &c. make Tablets of the weight of one dram, three drams, &c. of which let him take one, &c.

The *VTILITY* of the strengthening Tablets see before in the strengthening Electuary; as also

also that of the altering Tablet in the same place, which usually are every where prescribed to stay rheumes falling into the breast; of binders and thickners, of which also one that is prescribed for use, is to be frequently held in the mouth.

CHAP. V.

Of Pills.

THey are so called of the Latines, in regard of the similitude they have with a ball, which with them is pila; *but of the Greeks they are called* Catapotia, *because they are swallowed down whole.*

It is a solid form of medicine, round like a ball, made of powders, and sometimes gums, juices temper'd with some clammy liquor, chiefly prepared to purge withal, but sometimes also to alter and strengthen.

But *for the clearer explication, they are three sorts,* Purging, *Usual, or Epicratical, and altering.*

The purging Pills.

Although in speaking properly, Pills are purgeing, yet because they may be prepared for divers uses, and because those which purge do it either strongly or gently, and are more strengthening, these last are commonly called usual pills, the other purge-

ing Pills, which are seldom prescribed by the Physitian, because the officinal or shop pills are wont to be used in their stead; yet shal I hereafter declare the orders for making them.

And these are either officinal, *or* Magisterial; *the officinal either* purge, *or do not* purge.

Those which do not purge *are the pills of* Bdellium *and* Cynogloss, *the* Hypoglottides *white and black; yet these do not properly belong to this place.*

The purging Pills are those which are most usual, or lesse usual.

The *more usual* are,

Aureæ, *choler*, Aloephanginæ, *chol. phlegm.* Aggregatia, *chol. phleg.* Sine quibus, *all humors*, *chol.* de Agarico, *phl.* Cochiæ, *phl.* Lucis majores, *phl. serous hum.* Hermodactil, *phleg. serous hum.* Indæ, *melanch. phlegm.* Fœtidæ majores *purge the same.*

The less usual are, Pills of Rheubarb, *cho.* Assaiereth, *ch.* Eupatorio, *ch.* Imperiales, *ch. phleg.* Russi, *cho.* de Hiera, *ch. phleg.* Arthriticæ, *ch. phl.* Arabicæ, *phl.* Pil de 5 generib. Mirobalanor. *chol. phleg. melanch.* of Mastick, *Phl.* de Aloe, *Sagapeni*; Sare collæ, ante cibum, *phl. chol.* Stomachicæ, de Fumaria, *Melanch.* de Lapid. lazuli, *melan. chol. phlegm.*

The Magisterial, as to their composition, are made first either of some fit powder, made up with a convenient liquor.

This powder, as to its quality, is either some purging simple, yet so that Aloes (which is the basis of all Pills) must alwayes be one ingredient) or else some fit corrector, or appropriate director, as is said in the purging Opiate.

Note,

Note, that the purer sort of gums may be also added, as Ammoniack, Opopanax.

As to the quantity of the powder, one ounce wil suffice, seldom to an ounce and half; for seeing the dose of pills is neer a dram, that wil suffice for eight doses, and wil last a fortnight; but let two parts of this powder be purging, and one part correctors.

The Liquor to make them up withall, in relation to its quality, may be cute; some fit juyce or muscilage, but more often honey boyled and clarified, but generally some appropriate syrup.

As to the quantity, 'tis said, *ſ. q.*

2. Or (which is most effectual,) let the purgers be boyled (after the manner of extracts) to four or six ounces, together with their correctors, in some appropriate liquor or juyce, as for the Apozems, afterwards straining and pressing them out hard; in six, seven, or eight ounces of this strained liquor dissolve six drams, or one ounce of Aloes *Succotrine* for a continuance of the use; after coagulate to the consistency of Honey, then add some corroborating powder to two drams, as also Scammony, if it be to the scope of the Physitian, (because that must not be boyled) to one, two, or three drams.

The *USE* of the officinal: as to the *manner*, they are to be swallowed whole.

As to the *quantity*, the stronger are given from one scruple in youths, to one dram, in men of ripe age; as are *Aureæ, Cochiæ, Fetidæ majores, Arthriticæ, Indæ, de lapide lazuli, de Hermodactilis.*

The

The moderate sort from two scruples to four scruples, as *Agregativæ, sine quibus, de agarico, de aloe, de ℞ mirobalanis, de fumaria.*

The gentler sort from one dram to two drams, as *pill. de Rhenbarb. assaireth, aloephangine, antecibum, mastichinæ, Ruffi, de hiera.*

But if these be used after the manner of the usual pills, one scruple, or half a dram will suffice, two hours before meat, dinner, and supper.

As to the *time*, in the morning, as other purgers.

The *USE* of the magisterial pills, as to the manner and time, is the same.

As to their quantity, see the purging opiate.

The *FORM* of prescribing the officinal pills; ℞ &c. *i. e.* the mass of such and such pills, &c. *Diagridium* four or five grains, &c. (as a quickner of the rest) in cholerick people; as also four or five grains of the Troschiscks of Alhandall, in phlegmatick; or four or five grains of *Castor* in cold affections of the head; with such a water make pills in number six, seven, or eight, which being gilded, let it be taken betimes in the morning, or else just after midnight (if they should draw from the head) with the due care and custody, having taken a light supper: or at going to sleep, if for the head, that the purging faculty, together with the gentle vapors of the supper might be carried up to the head.

The *FORME* of prescribing the magisterial pills, ℞ &c. with &c. make a mass of pills, which annoint with oyl of sweet Almonds or anniseeds, and wrap it in a bladder, and keep them in a convenient box. Take of this mass &c. and make &c.

The

The *UTILITY*: It is most eminent for purging from the habit and third region of the body; then this form is chiefly to be chosen, for the purgative faculty staying longer in the stomack, *by reason of its slow dissolution*, and not descending so quickly into the inerals, hath time to diffuse its virtue to the very habit of the body, with great benefit; but the use of them is chiefest in phlegmatick persons, & less in the cholerick, rather in the winter than the summer; they are effectual also in opening obstructions, for the reason aforesaid, especially if they admit *gum ammoniack*, for the belly of such is apt to be bound, and is scarce mollified, unless they contain *ammoniack*; and then a little broth should be drank after it.

USUALL PILLS.

These purge truly, but very gently, and are rather strengthening; and because the use of them is often in a week, and that without any care or custody, therefore are they called usual pills.

As to the *COMPOSITION*: they are made of *Aloe succotrina*, as the basis, to half an ounce, or six drams, other gentle purgers being added, as rheubarb, agarick, &c. to one dram or two drams, and some strengthening simples, as cinamom, cloves, mastick, compound spices, to one dram or two drams, with *s. q.* of syrup of wormwood, &c.

Note that *ammoniack* dissolved is generally added in obstructions, to one dram or two drams, so is *myrrh*. Also in the form, *aloes mollified in the juice of Wormwood*, is sometimes profitably

profitably prescribed, and *Rheubarb* sprinkled with some convenient liquor, til it be soft.

The *USE*, as to the manner, is as above.

As to the *quantity*, and *time*, half a dram of the aforesaid mass (of which is made four pills) is to be taken; of which let him take two in the morning two hours before dinner, and the other two two hours before supper, twice or thrice a week; in those dayes in which he abstains from the strengthening Opiate, if that be also prescribed; otherwise without this admonition, for they are usually prescribed together, as aforesaid.

This is their form, R. *&c.* with *&c.* make a masse of pills, of which take, *&c:*

The *UTILITY* is great, in bodies very cacochymical, especially the phlegmatick, in whom the stomack is daubed with a continual drossie phlegme, from whence springs the whole series of diseases: for they much strengthen the stomack, help concoction: and if any noxious thing lurk in it, they purge it forth; neither suffer they any noxious thing to be gathered in it: therefore they are profitable in all affections arising from thence, either of the mesentery, Head, Liver, Joynts, *&c.*

Of the strengthening and altering Pills.

Although all pills properly ought to be purging, yet the solid form may, and useth to be composed for other intentions, to strengthen and alter variously, both in first, second, and third qualities, viz. when we would have the medicine stay and delay some time before it descend, either that the medicinal quality

may

may work more effectually on the part where it is, or that by its delay might be diffused to other parts communicating with it, and might be distributed both by secret and visible passages of the body.

And these either are retained in the mouth, *and are not swallowed; or else are swallowed.*

Those retained in the mouth, *are* Pillul. Bechichæ, *so called for their round form, (or else in a Lupine fashion, and then are they referr'd to the Troschischs:) and from their admirable quality of stilling the cough, and from the manner of using them, they are called* Hypoglottides, *or* Sublinguales, *because they are contained under, or on the tongue, til they leisurely dissolve, and are dedicated to the cough, and affections of the windpipe and breast.*

These are *COMPOUNDED* of a powder of lenifying thoracical simples, as *powder and juyce of Liquorice, gum dragant, Arabick, Starch, Penidies, Sugar, White Poppy-seeds*, &c. to one ounce, or two ounces, as need requireth, or the time you use them be long or short.

And that powder is taken with a sufficient quantity of *muscilage of gum dragant* drawn with *Rose-water*, or with the *muscilage of Quince-kernels*, &c. or with a *pectoral syrup, and made into Troschischs, or pills.*

The *USE* and *FORM*, R. &c. with the muscilage, &c. make a masse, out of which make pils to be dissolved on the tongue, of which let him frequently hold one under his tongue til it dissolve of it self, and be leisurely swallowed.

The *UTILITY* is as above, to ease the cough, lenifie

the roughneſs of the Wind-pipe and Jaws, help hoarſneſs of the voice, and facilitate ſpitting.

Hither belong the Lupine faſhioned Troſchiſcks, which are held in the mouth to ſtay rheums.

But thoſe Pills that ſtrengthen or alter any way are commodiouſly ſwallowed down, in the affections of the ſtomack, proceeding from its crude flatuouſneſs, and thoſe which communicate with it, as the head eſpecially, or thoſe that are neerly adjacent, as the Liver, &c. thoſe made of appropriate ſtrengtheners are convenient in the affections of the head, by the continuance of them, in the ſtomack eſpecially, if they be taken after meat; for ſo the fuming quality of them aſcends; and ſo they conduce to the affections of the eyes, againſt the dimneſs of ſight, made of eye medicines, or ophthalmicks.

Or elſe they are given at going to bed, ſuch are the ſleeping officinal Pills, as thoſe of Cynogloſſe, *which are every where preſcribed to ſtay and dry up rheumes, and to provoke ſleep; and hither* Laudanum *may be referred (as moſt uſed) to* gr. *IV. or V: they are preſcribed alſo for fluxes of the belly, of ſtrengtheners and binders, to be taken both before and with meat; as alſo againſt the imbecility of the Liver, Gonorrhea, Ulcers of the Reins and Bladder, Stone, and divers affections of the womb.*

But they are *COMPOUNDED* of a convenient powder, ſerving to the ſcope of the Phyſitian, as the affections ſhall ſuggeſt; and that preſcribed to half an ounce, five or ſix drams, which is to be made up with a convenient ſyrup.

The *USE*, as to the *quantity*, of one dram of the

the mass are made six Pills, of which two are taken once or twice a day.

As to the *Time*, they may be taken morning, and evening; before, after, or with meat, as aforesaid in the Candles.

As to the *Manner*, they are swallowed down; and if it be for affections of the lower parts, as affections of the Liver, Bowels, Reins, Bladder, Womb, a little of some convenient Liquor should be drank after them, that thereby the Medicinal virtue might be conveyed to those parts the sooner, to good purpose.

The *UTILITY* is enough spoken of before.

CHAP. VI.

Of Troschisks.

They are otherwise called Circulets, and little Cakes, by the Greeks, and Pastils by the Latines, and of some Orbicles.

It is a solid and hard form of Medicine, in the forms of Lupines, made of divers powders into a paste with some convenient liquor, which made into little round Cakes are dried and kept.

And these are either *officinal* or *magistrial*.

And both of them either *internal* or *external*.

The *officinal internal* ones, are either,

Purgative,

Purgative, as Agaricus troschisatus, troſch. of Alhandal, troſch. de violis.

Or altering, *either without Opium, as troſch. of Vipers, of Squils, Cipheos, Hidecroy: or with Opium, as troſch. de alkekengi, for the reins and bladder; of Amber, for the Womb.*

Or Cordial, *as gallia Moſcat. alipta matuſc.*

Or pectoral, *as Bechica albi, nigri.*

Or opening, *as troſc. Diarrhodon, and of Rhevbarb for the Liver, troſc. de Lupatorio, of Warmwood, and de lacca, for the Liver and Spleen; troſc. of myrrh for the Womb.*

Magiſterial, *as they were formerly moſt uſual, ſo are they now ſcarcely at all preſcribed, unleſſe for fumings: (for which they are frequent, as ſhall be ſaid) or for coughs and defluxions, as the pils Sublinguales before mentioned; they are alſo made uſually for the ulcers of the bladder and reins, ſharpneſs of the water, and to ſtop fluxes of blood, ſeed, and the belly, both to binde and open; and they may alſo be made to ſtrengthen; In ſumm, they are preſcribed inſtead of powders, as more effectual; becauſe in this form the medicinal quality doth not ſo eaſily vaniſh, but is preſerved by this means commodiouſly.*

They are *COMPOUNDED* of a convenient powder of divers things taken in a convenient Liquor, and mixed till they come to the form of pills, or a paſte, out of which they make little round cakes, which (being marked with your mark) are to be dryed in the ſhadow, and to be laid up for uſe and theſe are made to the weight of 1 dram, 1 dram and a half, 2 drams, 3 drams at moſt, according to the virtue and efficacy of the ingedients; but the powder of which they

they are made is to be chosen out of divers parts of vegetables, especially such as are easily powdered; as also of gums that are powderable, as Cherry gum, Styrax gum, Tragants; and also juyces thickened, as Acacia', Hypocistis: and generally out of all things ease to be powdered.

As to the quantity; this sort of powder may be prescribed from an ounce, to an ounce and half, and two ounces, according as your use of them shall continue; but most commonly an ounce and a half will suffice.

That which these are made up withal, is either thin as wine, water, distilled water, the juyce of herbs; or clammy, as the muscilage of gum dragant, or Arabick, drawn with a convenient water.

As to the quantity they are prescribed, *q.s.*

The *USE*, and form, Rx. *&c.* Make Troschischs as bigg as Lupines, of the weight of, *&c.* let them be dryed in the shadow; when you use them, break one or two according to their efficacy and weight; dissolve it in a fit Liquor; let it be used either inward or outwards, for they are prescribed as is said for both internal and external uses: yet note, that those which are for fumings are not to be dissolved, as neither are those called Hypoglottides.

The *UTILITY* is sufficiently expressed; for in this form may be kept both Alterers & strengtheners. For Troschischs are rather invented to preserve the virtue of the powders entire, than that it should be any othewise a useful form of a medicine; for we do not use them whole, but dissolved first in a convenient Liquor, except the Hypoglottides, and these for Suffumigations.

But this form is most profitable, because powders (especially the cordials) and others that consist of a thin essence, easily exhalable) by this means retain their virtues against the injury of the ayre, nor wil suffer them to be diffused, and as it were centers them, and so produceth a more effectual united faculty.

To the Troschiscbs are to be referred the Muscardines.

Which are little pastils, so called from the musk they contain, cheifly composed for the perfuming the breath, and to exalt venereall moriscoes; such are these of Gallia moschata, that are most effectual.

They are compounded either simply of ambergreese, musk, grains three, four, &c: as you wil; and *q. s.* sugar dissovled in *rose-water* with a little starch.

Or else more compounded of the powder of some aromatical things of sweet savor, as cinnamom, Saunders one dram, musk, Ambergreese, *gr.* three or four, as you list, and sugar *q. s.* make troschischs, of which let him hold one often in his mouth.

CHAP. VII.

Of Powders.

The USE *of* POWDERS *is extream necessary, both that solid medicines may come in use of themselves, as also that they may the easilier be mixed with other formes of medicines; but that which the Latines cal a powder, the Arabians call by 3. names;*

names; *Suffuff* any groſs powder, *Alcohol* the fineſt powders, and *Seiff* the grinding of any ſort of troſchiſchs, which is done on a ſtone with a fit water, for affections of the eyes; but a powder is either officinal or magiſterial, of which this diſcourſe is.

The magiſterial is either *internal*, or *external*.

The *internall is either purging, ſtrengthening, or altering*.

Purging Powder.

The definition and differences may be ſought out of what is aforeſaid.

It is compounded of Catharticks, and for the moſt part thoſe that are the pleaſanteſt with their proper correctors, in a proportion often before mentioned.

As to the quantity, to an ounce; an ounce and half is the moſt is preſcribed; and note that ſugar for the more delicate may be added, but in a ſmal quantity, or equal to the powder, and that exactly defined.

The *USE*, as to the manner, 'tis to be taken in broth, or ſome convenient liquor.

As to the *quantity*, the doſes of the purgers are to be computed.

As to the *time*, in the morning with cuſtody.

The *FORM*, R. *&c. Make a* powder, of which, *&c.*

The *UTILITY* is to purge, ſee afore.

The ſtrengthening powder.

Although it may be preſcribed to ſtrengthen divers parts, according to the ſcope of the Phyſitian;

yet 'tis either to confirm the stomack, and is called a Digestive; or the heart, and is called a Cordial, and an Alexiteria'; it may be also made for other uses, as to strengthen the Liver, Intrals, &c.

The *COMPOSITION*, 1, of the digestive powder, is in general of stomachical things that help concoction, dissolvers of wind, and binders.

But in special, *Coriander-seed prepared* is usually the basis, prescribed to an ounce, to which are added things that discuss wind, as Anniseed to half an ounce, or 6 drams; then strengtheners of the stomack, either simple or compound, to 2 or 3 drams at most, with sugar of Roses in tablets, *s. q.*

2. The Cordial powder, or that which strengthens other parts, which is compounded both of simple and compound powders of Electuaries, proper and specifical to half an ounce, 6 drams, or 1 ounce, according as the use of it shall continue, long or short, yet so that the more pretious Cordial powders be joyned but in a small quantity, either to a fourth or sixth part; & these are prescribed either alone, or for the better taste sake, sugar rosat is mixed with them to three or four times their weight.

The *USE* and *form* of the Digestive powder, Rx. *&c.* Make a powder, of which let him take a spoonful, neither eating nor drinking after it.

But of a Cordial, or other strengthening powder, as hepatical, *&c.* this is the form, Rx. *&c.* Make a powder, of which let him take 1, 2, or 3 drams, with water, broath, or other convenient liquor, and that in the morning, the stomack being empty, or else when necessity requires, especially if it be Alexiterial.

The

The *UTILITY*, is for the ſtrengthening of the principal parts, and others alſo; and conſiſts for the moſt part of hot things, yet with the ſame intention of ſtrengthening, they may be prepared of cooling things.

Hither appertains the altering powder, altering divers wayes, according to the ſcope, in firſt, ſecond, and third qualities, as that which is generally preſcribed of ſteel againſt obſtructions, with other openers, to one ounce, or two ounces, with an equal quantity of ſugar; of which a ſpoonful is taken every morning, drinking after it a little wine, or other convenient Liquor; ſo againſt the ſtone or gravel, of ſtone-breaking medicines to an ounce, an ounce and a half, and Sugar, *ſ. q.* of which take one dram, or a dram and a half, with a diuretical Liquor: ſo to provoke the birth and courſes; as alſo to bind the fluxes of blood both by ſtool, and from the Womb and bladder: againſt all kindes of fluxes, and to alter divers wayes, when moyſture is one cauſe offending.

Thus much of an internal powder.

The external powder is alſo ſometimes preſcribed, and is either phyſical, or chirurgical.

The phyſical or medicinal is for the moſt part ſtrengthening, as is uſually preſcribed for comforting and drying the brain; of proper cephalical things, as Roots, Leaves, &c. preſcribed to two ounces, adding to it alſo, and that frequently the violet or cypris powder to one ounce, or one ounce and a half, more or leſs; but for the moſt part they take of roots two ounces, ſeeds ſix drams, flowers three drams, ſpices two drams.

The *USE* and *FORM*, &c. Make a groſs powder, with which let the head be dryed in the morning, which is moſt uſual after the waſhing of it.

The *UTILITY* is to ſtrengthen the brain, and dry the phlegmatick, and to waſte the excrementitious moyſture of the hairs of the head. The Chyrurgical powder is various, to be preſcribed only by a Chyrurgeon, to cleanſe, fil, and heal Ulcers, ſtop the bleeding of wounds, &c. the quantity of preſcribing it varies according to the various occaſion of its uſe.

THE

THE SECOND BOOK. OF EXTERNAL REMEDIES.

The First SECTION: Of Remedies common to many parts.

CHAP. I.

Of Epithemes, or liquors to be applyed to any part.

IF you regard the signification of the name, every external medicine that is applyable to any part may be so called; but now it claims a peculiar kinde of right in designing only those remedies that are externally applyed to the Heart, and Liver, and

the nobler parts of the body to alter & strengthen; and is two-fold, liquid, and solid.

The liquid Epitheme.

The name is apparent, and it is fluid like water, or a Julep, chiefly composed of a convenient liquor, and cordial powders.

In it three things are to be considered, the *Composition*, *Use*, and *Utility*.

In the *Composition* we must regard the matter of which 'tis made, whether *liquid*, or *dry*, (as powder) or *mean* between both: and in either of these the *quality*, and *quantity*.

The *Liquor*, as to its quality, is for the most part a distilled water as the basis, such as is proper both for the affection and part affected; and that either alone, or else other things are joyned with it, either chiefly to make it penetrate, or give it the more efficacy, and this is most commonly *white wine* for the heart, *Vinegar* for the Liver; so also for its greater virtues, there are usually added the juyces of Fruits, as of *Limons*, or else of Leaves proper for the affection.

Sometimes the Liquor is a very liquid decoction, of appropriate things, but seldom.

As to the *quantity*, 'tis usually prescribed to one pint, or 15 ounces; therefore if water be prescribed, it should be to such a quantity; but if other liquid things be added, let this be the proportion; of water, 8 ounces; of Juyces, from two ounces to three; of Wine, or Vinegar, from half an ounce, to an ounce.

The *Powder*, as to its quality, is either simple, of Cordial or Hepatical woods & barks chiefly, also of flowers, seeds, *&c.* or compound of strengthening electuaries, and sometimes aromatical troschischs.

As

As to the quantity, to every ounce of liquor one scruple or half a dram of powder will suffice, so that to the whole proportion, half an ounce, or 6 drams may be prescribed, so that not above a dram or two of the species of Electuaries may be taken.

The things of mean consistence, in relation to their quality, there is sometimes besides the liquor and powder (of which an Epitheme alwayes consists,) a strengthening Opiate, or cordial confection, as *Alchermes*, prescribed to one dram, or two drams.

The *USE*: as to the manner, it is applyed with a scarlet cloth, or some soft linnen dipped in it, gently pressed forth, and applyed warm; and when it either grows cold or dry, 'tis to be renewed several times, and continued thus a quarter, or half an hour, twice a day.

NO quantity for each time is set down.

The *time* is in the morning and evening, if the affection be cold, or it be in winter; otherwise it is to be used 4 times a day if hot, or in the summer; and note this diligently that if the strength be extream weak, after the use of a liquid one, the solid one should be prescribed.

The *FORM* of *prescribing*, R. &c. Make a liquid Epitheme to be kept in a glass; at the time of using it take a scarlet cloth, &c.

The *UTILITY*: 'tis generally used to corroborate, and also to cool, seldom to heat, (for this purpose the solid form is more effectual) it is prescribed against the hot distempers of the heart and Liver, as also to strengthen and resist malignity, if there be any suspition of it: their use is chiefest in Fevers in the Summer time.

NOte,

Note, that liquid Epithemes may be applyed to the whole breast profitably, in burning and hectick fevers, composed of moyst and cooling waters, or decoctions prescribed in a greater quantity; as also in the burnings of the head, Phrensie, &c. see Rose-vinegar.

They are also sometimes applyed to the testicles in extream heats; for by their communication with the whole body, the very habit of the body and the blood is cooled; therefore it is most profitable in the bleeding at nose or otherwise, and to this purpose they use a mixture of vinegar and water; to the same end sometimes cooling things are applyed to the hand-wrists, against the heat and fervency of the heart, so also to the fierceness of the face, &c. in summ, every thing comprehended under the name of an Epitheme may be used to any part inflamed or beset with a hot affection; though the word Epitheme be properly understood of a thing in relation to the heart or Liver.

The solid Epitheme.

That is called so that is not fluid like water though they are prescribed of a diverse consistence, as wel a soft as otherwise.

In it note three things, *Composition*, the *Use*, and *Utility*.

As to the *COMPOSITION*, 'tis made divers wayes.

1. Either (and this is most usual) in the form of an Opiate, made of conserves of flowers, powders of electuaries, (but seldom of a simple powder) and of Confections as aforesaid, with a fit Li-

Liquor, distilled water simple or compound, an appropriate juyce, &c.

As to the quantity in general, it scarce exceeds four ounces; but in special, let there be of conserves, three ounces; confections, three drams; powders, one dram, or two at most.

2. Or else in form of a *liniment*, especially in hot affections of the heart, as also in cold; they may also be used in affections of the Liver, of *oyntment of Roses*, *ceratum santalinum*, &c. two ounces; fit conserves, half an ounce, six drams: to cordial powders, half a dram, or at two scruples.

3. Or of [*See what* Pipio *signifies, for it is not a Pippin*] a Pippin cut in two, in the middle, and is most usual, which let be strewed with one dram of the powder of some cordial Electuary, or two drams of the powder of ordinary *Epithemes*.

Hither may be referred Puppies and Kittens cut in halves to be applyed to the head, chiefly in the declination of Phrensies, sprinkled with a digesting and strengthening powder, of the flowers of *Roses*, *Chamomil*, berries of kermes, and such like, to half an ounce.

The *USE*: as to the manner, let the solid one in the form of an Opiate be extended on a scarlet cloth wet in a convenient Liquor, and gently pressed; and then be applyed warm to the region of the heart, and that either after the use of the liquid one, or otherwise also.

The *time* is indifferent, it may be renewed twice or thrice a day.

The *FORM* appears out of the composition, R. &c. make an Epithemie, &c.

The

The *utility* of a solid form like an Opiate is chiefly to strengthen and heat, as also that in form of a Liniment: and that made with a Pipio; see before; they may also be made to cool of Conserves, in the form of a Liniment; but that form is chiefly used, and most profitable for the Liver.

In general, they are made to alter & strengthen where the strength is much wasted.

CHAP. II.

Of Lotions.

THe reason and definition of the name is clear; for it is as it were a particular kinde of Bathe, dedicated chiefly to the head and feet; hence I account it two-fold; Cephalical, and for the feet.

The Cephalical Lotion.

IS *COMPOUNDED* of a decoction of Cephalical simples; in which two things are to be considered, the *matter*, and the Liquor; & in these the quality, and quantity.

The *MATTER*, in relation both to *quality*, and *quantity*; there is taken of roots, to two ounces, or three ounces; of Leaves, from four handfuls, to eight; seeds, from one ounce to two; flowers, pug. 4.

Note,

Note, that sometimes spices are added to half an ounce, or six drams, and when you would dry powerfully, unmelted brimstone, half an ounce; and when the head is to be particularly purged, after general means you may add Senna leaves to one ounce, white Agarick half an ounce.

The *Liquor*, as to the quality, is either a *Lye* made of Vine ashes, or the ordinary Lye of Barbers, adding *white wine* if you wil, or to the wine add water to 4 ounces. As to the quantity, 'tis said of wine, *ſ. q.* or of each a like quantity.

The *USE*: as to the *manner*, the head is wet with it, in the sun-shine, in a clear day, and if you can, a quiet warm place; afterwards the head is to be throughly dryed with sponges soaked in *Aqua vitæ*; and lastly, 'tis to be covered diligently with dryed locks of hemp wel fumed with suffumigations.

The time, let it be washed in the morning, two hours before dinner, the belly being first evacuated.

The *Form*, R. *&c.* Make a decoction, wash the head, &c.

The *UTILITY* is great after purging, where the relicks of the matter imparted is to be dissipated & consumed; as also where the head is to be strengthened, and they are for the most part addicted onely to the cold distempers of the head and brain: they may also be prepared for other uses, as for outward affections of the head, as tetters, dandruff, lice, filth; made of the sharpest sort of cleansers, with urine and lye, alwayes adding cephalical herbs.

The

The lotion for the feet.

It compounded of the decoction of simples, hot or cold, made either in water or Lye; as is fittest for the purpose; the ingredients of the decoction should be in the same dose, as for the cephalical lotion.

But note, that (as to the *quality* of the ingredients,) because this is usually instituted to provoke sleep, the cooling cephalical simples are to be chosen, and that the heads of white Poppy in number 4, may wel be added.

Note also, that where you would dry, heat, and strengthen, and in the swelling oedematous, or phlegmatick affections of the leggs, *Salt* and *Allum* may be profitably mingled with it to four ounces, and *Quicksulfure* to two ounces.

The *USE* and *FORM*, &c. Make a decoction for a lotion for the feet, morning or evening, before meat, or before sleep, if it be to procure it.

The *UTILITY* is either to mend their own proper affections, trembling of them, to cal down the humours from the higher parts, if they are made of heating cephalical medicines; also to ease weariness, or (which is most generally the use of them) to provoke sleep in the raging heat of Fevers, and fervency of the brain.

CHAP.

CHAP. III.

Of a Fomentation.

IT is called a Fomentation because it doth foment and cherish the parts to which it is applyed, by the heat it is applyed withall, for all Fomentations are in action hot, seldom any cold.

And it is two-fold, moist, and dry.

The moyst Fomentation.

The moyst one is a Liquor fit to be applyed to divers parts by the help of Limons, sisters, Sponges, serving to divers intentions.

And this is again two-fold, simple, and more compound.

The *SIMPLE* Liquor that is wont to be prescribed for a Fomentation, as to its quality, is either hot or warm water, when we would relax in paine that come from over-much fulnes; or *Wine*, when we would discusse and strengthen; or *wine* and *water* together where we would do both at once, or either temperately; or *milk* in great paines, or *oyl* common, or other where we would mollifie in relation to the paine, and digest as to the scopes or *water and oyl*, *Vinegar and water*, or *Vinegar of Roses* in hot affections, or *Lee* of *Vine-ashes* in cold affections; if we should digest and dry strongly.

As to the *quantity*, that is to be defined by the long continuance of the use of it, and the bigness of the part to be fomented: so for the eye 4 ounces wil suffice; for the stomack one pint, or a pint and a half; for the *short rib-region* and belly, as is usual in obstructions three pints.

The *Compound* is made of the decoction of various kindes of simples, parts of plants, and a convenient *Liquor*, in which we must consider quality, and quantity.

As to the *quality* of the *matter*, there are prescribed roots, leaves, fruits, seeds, flowers, sometimes all together, where a greater quantity is to be prepared, sometimes some few only.

As to the *quantity*, it is various according to the diversity of the parts. As for example, for the eyes, it may be prescribed to the dose of a potion, or the fourth part of the Apozem, for four ounces wil suffice, or six at most; for the stomack, half the proportion of an Apozem, or something more; for the whole belly, the whole dose of the Apozem.

The *Liquor* in which the decoction is to be made, is *simple water*, or *water* and *wine* together, sometimes milk where you would lenifie; Lye where you would digest; Smiths water where binde, &c. according to the scope; as to the quantity, tis prescribed *q. s.*

Note, that sometimes the decoction being made and strained, divers things may be added, as *white wine* in obstructions of the bowels, to one pint, or a pint and a half; sometimes *Vinegar*, in affections of the spleen, to 6, 7, or 8 ounces for penetration sake; *Aqua vitæ* for the stomack, to two or three ounces, and to strengthen also, or

ap-

appropriate oyls to 4 ounces, half a pint, &c. and it is generally the use in practice to prescribe them after the use of the Apozem in obstructions of the bowels; as ℞. of the decoction prescribed for the Apozem, three or four pints, add to it of wine, &c. make a fomentation for the belly.

The *USE* and *FORM*, ℞. &c. Make a decoction for a fomentation, with which let the part affected be fomented with a doubled linnen cloth, shreds, or a sponge wet in it, and a little wrung out again; or else use a hoggs bladder half ful of the *Liquor*, morning and evening; so as it cools apply another by turns.

Note, that in the fomentation of the belly, under the short ribs, 'tis usually said, let the *short-rib-region* be fomented in the morning, 2 or 3 hours before dinner, or else before supper for three or four dayes, changing often the fomentation, lest it cool too much: and it is usually prescribed after the fomentation to be anointed with such an oyl, liniment, or unguent hot. The Use is after general purgations, otherwise whe need requires.

The UTILITY is large, so that there is hardly any part, which as it may be fomented, shal not receive very much benefit from it; it is used to the eyes affected, both for the pain, and inflammation of them, &c. Also against obstructions of the spleen and bowels, &c. against the pains of divers parts, to provoke the courses; for the choleriek affections of the reins, inflammations of the chins. It rarifies the skin, that the humours contained may be the better digested, attenuated, dissolved when they are thin; and when hard mollified; it turns things to vapours, and helps much by its gentle heat; hence it is u-

sed in pains, to relax, mollifie, digest, dry, binde, strengthen, heat, and also sometimes to cool, but then there is rather to be used an Epithem, as in cholerick inflammations,

The dry Fomentation.

So I cal (from the effect) that fomentation, and baggs which are chiefly prescribed to dissolve, from whence they are usually called discussing baggs, of which hereafter.

CHAP. IV.

Of the petty Bath.

THis is between a Bath and Fomentation, larger than this, lesser than that, whose use is when a fomentation cannot cover the whole part from which it doth not differ; otherwise either in matter or utility; so that it is a half bath, in which the sick set from their thighs, their knees and leggs being lifted up; Or else from the bottom of their feet, up to their Navel or stomack, from whence the Greeks and Latines cal it by names that signifie a *setting in*, and if the incession be in an open stool, they cal it a Vaporary, which is chiefly dedicated to the affecti-

ons

ons of the lower parts of the belly, and is called a *SEMICUPE*, or half bath, because it is not a whole Bath, but a bathing tub onely half ful, and is *COMPOUNDED* of the same things a Fomentation is, to double the quantity of the Apozem, or to half the quantity of a bath, so that there is nothing else worth marking.

The *USE* and *FORM*, &c. Make a Decoction for a half bath, in which let the sick set, from the feet to the Navel, morning and evening, long from meat, having first had a stool to be continued three or four dayes, (according as there is need,) warm without sweating: let him stay in it about two hours, the moisture being wiped off, let him rest in his bed, the place affected being anointed, (if you will) with a fit Liniment.

Note, that in the affections of the Anus, Womb and bladder, chiefly the matter of the half bath may be applyed to the part affected in a bagg, on which let him set.

The UTILITY is the same with the Fomentation, but chiefly to be used in affections of the parts contained in the belly, or lower region, when for divers reasons we dare not bath the whole body; and is most commonly to ease pain, (which is most usual in nephritical affections, made of convenient mollifiers,) to help the Hemorrhoids sweld with pain, the difficulty of Urine; also for the paines of the legges & hips, of things that mollifie, ease pain, in affections of the bladder, and difficulty of making water, 'tis most admirable; as also in mending the affections, and distempers of the Womb, either provoking,

or stopping the courses; in all affections of the Anus, to mollifie the Belly, ease paines of the colick, &c.

A VAPORART, ¶ which otherwise is called a setting over, is prepared when they set not in the Liquor, but the *VAPOUR* (from whence it is called a Vaporary, or suffumigation) is received through a hollow stool with a hole cut in the seat, setting a pot ful of the hot decoction underneath, which being cold, another is set hot in the place.

The *MATTER* and dose of it for the decoction, is as in the fomentation, to be prescribed in the quantity of a Clyster, or something greater.

The *USE* and *FORM*, R. &c. Make a decoction, the steam of which let him receive thorow a hollow stool, a pot being set under of the hot decoction, &c.

The UTILITY: it is used only for affections of the Womb and Anus, for paine, and divers distempers, Hemorrhoids, to provoke the courses; they may also be prescribed for divers defects of the bladder; See the moist Suffumigation.

CHAP.

CHAP. V.

Of a Bath.

IT was most usual of old among the Romans for pleasure, but now a dayes only used for the recovery of health, and resisting of diseases; what it is is manifest, but it is two-fold; the A-ery Bath which they call a hot house, of which hereafter; and the watrish Bath, when the parties setting in a tub are washed, and this is called a Bath, *viz.* the washing of the whole body for the most part for hot and dry distempers of the whole body, seldom for cold ones, for which purpose the Stove is most convenient.

And it is two-fold, simple and compound.

The *simple* is usually only water a little warmed, chiefly in Hecticks, where there are lean and dry bodies, which this tempers by its gentle moisture, and with it also alters the distemper; to this also is sometimes added Oyl, Butter, or Milk to moisten the more; as also in the pain of the Kidnies, and Convulsion; or else of Milk only for the richer sort of people, to the same purpose; or Milk and water; or oyl alone in paines of the sinewy parts, and Reins, convulsion through drought, pricking, and stitches, suppression of Urine, *&c.* or water and Oyl to the same end.

The *Compound* is made of a decoction, in which are to be considered the matter, liquor, and sometimes the things to be dissolved in it.

The *MATTER*, in relation to its *quality*, and *quantity*, are Roots, from three lib. to 5 or 6 at most; Herbs, in number 10 or 12, of each, M. 3, 4, or of 6, 7, or 8, of each a bundle; seeds, from 4 ounces to one pound; sometimes Fruits, to a pound and a half; Flowers 4, *&c.* ana. P. 4, *&c.*

The *Liquor*, as to *quality*, and *quantity*, is sweet or fair water, *q. s.* for a bath.

Sometimes there are *dissolved*, or added to the decoction, and that profitably to the various scope of the indications, those things mentioned in the Fomentation in a three or 4 fold proportion; so usually for the Hectical is added oyl and butter, ana, lib: 3. white Wine lib: 4. as also sometimes at the latter end of the Decoction in cold affections, in which a bath is very rare.

The *USE* and *FORM*, R. *&c.* Make a Decoction for a bath, which let him enter into morning and evening, when the meat is gone out of the stomack, (or else when need requires as in paines,) (having first been at stool) warm without sweating; let him continue in it from one to two hours, according to his strength; then after his egress from the Bath, wipe off the moisture, & anoint the region of the Liver & Reins with a cooling Oyntment, which is usually prescribed.

The UTILITY is for outward affections of the skin, as the scabbiness, drought, and itch of it, *&c.* as also for internal affections, and espe-

especially a bath of fair water, most convenient for the Hectical and lean people, because it moistneth, and withal mends the hot distemper; they are also convenient in the diary Fevers, as was generally the practise of *Galen*; for it relaxeth and openeth the pores by which that which is offensive may be easily excluded; and are also good for the heat of the Liver, and every distemper, but especially the hot; onely the moist one is usually remedied, and better by the hot house, (as also the cold one) which fitly resists the morbifical cause. They are also made to heat and strengthen, as generally to help Conception, of Hysterical simples; to procure the menses, of opening mollifying simples, appropriated to the Womb: against obstructions of the bowels, Dropsie, Cholick, Stone in the Kidnies, weariness, of relaxing mollifying things. Lastly, in every affection that wants cooling and moistening, or heating and moistening together.

CHAP. VI.

Of a Stoveor Sudatory.

IT is otherwise called a Laconic, *because the Laconians were wont to use it as the* Romans, *to bath; others call it a vaporary: In this, the sick party is not dipped in the Liquor, but onely warmed with either a hot and dry, or a hot and moist vapor, and caused to sweat.*

Therefore a stove is two-fold, a moist, and a dry.

The moist

Is made by the vapour of some decoction, whereby the aire under the Canopye grows hot.

It is COMPOSED of a Canopy (with a Bath) erected and placed over the sick, on which are layed sheets or blankets to keep in the vapour.

And this is heated diversly by the vapour.

1. Either by stoves fiery hot so placed underneath, that the Decoction to be used being cast cast on them, the vapour ascends to the aforesaid purpose.

2. Or else the Decoction is first poured in (yet so that it touch not the sick) and then into it the stones are dropped fiery hot.

3. Or (which is more commodious) the decoction is prepared in two Cauldrons, which are heated by turns, and poured into the under tub, as each other cools.

This Decoction is prepared of proper Roots, Leaves, Flowers for the most part hot, cephalical, wel sented, of thin parts; and in quantity as the highest proportion of the Apozems, and to be prescribed with water, *q. s.*

The USE and FORM, &c. Make a decoction, whose vapor let the sick receive under a Canopy close shut, so let him sweat at his pleasure; let him use it twice a day, long after meat, the belly being first emptied, and that for two dayes: let his stay in it be according to his strength; when he comes forth wipe off the sweat, and let him rest in his bed, &c. the use of this is most convenient in the winter, and spring, as of the bath in summer.

The

The dry Stove.

That is so called which onely is heated with the heat of the fire.

This is made

1. Either in the manner of an Oven, as in *Germany*, & is usually called a hot house, or Iaconic.

2. Or else fiery flints are layed under the Canopy on plates of iron, and so give a heat.

3. Or at this day for the *French* disease, 'tis made of a frame of wood like the cover of a burial bear; and with this the sick are covered, and sheds laid over it; & under it are placed little red hot stones, til the swear follow plentiful, the party having first drank a draught of the Decoction of Guajack, or some other sudorifick.

The USE is as the other; the stay in them according to their strength, which are thus much wasted, so that they can hardly indure one quarter, or half an hour.

The UTILITY; it warms the matter of the disease spread over all the body, and attenuates it; loosens the skin, and empties it; it is very effectual in cold and moist affections, looseneſſe of humors, the dropsie, Lencophlegmatia; for it powerfully dissolves the humours, and consumes them by swear, very profitable for them that are fat, especially those who are cacochymical, if the foulness of humours be either in the habit of the body, or in the veins. In the French Pox 'tis generally used dry, and is not to be used at all unlesse the body be first emptied, for then the relicks are by this way easily quite rooted out.

CHAP.

CHAP. VII.

Of Embrocation.

IT is not properly a certain Form of Medicine, but only a manner of using it, when we pour on any part some liquor or oyl, and that either pouring it from high, or only rubbing it gently in: for Practisers use the name of Embrocation either way, and usually confound it with Irrigation; for βρέχω signifies to rain, water, or dip; but be it as it will, here for distinction sake we will distribute it into Irrigation and Embrocation.

Irrigation.

It is a pouring of Liquor from high, like rain on any part (but chiefly the head) making it distill out of a snowted vessel, and differs from a Fomentation only in form of using it.

It is *PREPARED* divers ways.

1. Either of the *decoction* of divers parts of Plants, hot or cold, according to the scope in the quantity as for a Lotion, made in water or wine, as your indication requires, boyled to the consumption of the third part; in which being strained to one pound, may be sometimes added vinegar, wine, aqua vitæ (according as the affections be cold or hot) two or three drams, &c.

2. Or

2. Or of Oyl only plentifully powred, but this is better applyed as an Embrocation with linnen rags dipped in it, especially in convulsions, and affections of the nerves.

3. Or of oyl, distilled water, and vinegar in hot affections of the head; see the *Oxirrodinum*.

The *USE* and *FORM*, R, &c. of the decoction, *lib.* one, two or three, make an Irrigation from high with a stream on the part affected, &c. See the Lotions.

The *UTILITY*; tis chiefly dedicated to hot affections, especially of the head, the inflammations of the brain and membranes of it, and that on the forepart of the head; as also in provoking sleep, in hot affections and great watchings, though of late the Lotions of the feet be used in its stead; tis very usefull in Feavers where there is a *delirium*; and for hot affections of the head, for it cools much, because falling from high it pierceth the deeper, and because still a fresh Liquor comes on it; and the part so cooled, is thereby the more tempered. It may also be used profitably to its cold affections, but most of all to the hot, to which it chiefly belongs; and when we would most of all cool in the beginning of inflammations, we do it either with a cooling decoction, *Oxirrodinum* or *Oxicratum* in the *Erisipelas*. In cold affections (though these may be used) we rather use the Fomentation, as also in dissolving an inflammation: in Fractures and Luxations where tis not safe to unty the Ligatures, when pain is urgent, this may be used with *oyl* of *violets*, or to repel, *oyl* of *roses*. [*Oyls are suspected in Fractures and Luxations.*]

Note

Note that the dripping of bath waters may be referred to this place.

Embrocation.

It is not taken here for watring a thing from on high, but as it is at this day used, or for a gentle rubbing of the part with oyl, or for the applying of wool or linnen dipped in oyl or other convenient liquor; for *Embrecho* in Greek signifies both to dip, rain, or water a thing.

It is *COMPOUNDED* and prescribed, 1. Either of Wool, or Lints (which others call bolstrings) dipped (from whence its name) in oyl only, or in some other convenient Liquor, applyed to the part after the manner of an Epitheme, to be often renewed.

This *Liquor* is either oyl alone, or some juices only, or distilled waters only, or else all together in this proportion, Oyl, Juices, Water, ana four ounces.

2. Or as at this day *Embrocation* is understood for a gentle rubbing with the hand made with a convenient oyl; afterwards applying bolsters of hemp-hurds, linnen or cotten, either dipped or not dipped in the aforesaid.

It is also made of juice only, or of the others mixed with it, and then the *Dose* of them together, or of each several is four or six ounces.

The *USE* and *FORM*, ℞, &c. for an *Embrocation*; first let the part be gently rubbed, with it; after apply boulsters of linnen or cotten dipped, or not dipped in the same oyl.

Or according to the former manner, ℞, &c.

dip

dip your lurds and bolsters in it, and apply them renewing them often.

The *VTILITY*, the *Embrocation* of oyls is most frequent after bathings; it is also profitable to repel, in inflammations, erisipelas, phrensies, watchings, pains of the head, to warm all parts of the body, they are usually after bathing, the moysture being first wiped off; but evacuation should always forego the use of them: but they are chiefly profitable in external affections.

CHAP. VIII.

Of a Liniment.

A Liniment is a Liquid Form of Medicines, which is applied outwardly, in consistence thicker than oyle, but thinner than an ointment, whose basis is an oyl, prepared for divers uses.

In it three things are to be considered, the Composition, Vse, and Vtility.

As to the *COMPOSITION*, tis variously made of divers things.

1. Either of oyls and butter melted together without any wax (which some will (very much mistaken) not have in a Liniment.)

And the quantity of the whole Liniment is four, six, or eight ounces, according to the greatness of the part, and continuance of its use; let this be the proportion of the Ingredients: *viz.*

three

three or two parts of Oyl to one of batter, they are seldom equal.

Note, that if the scope of the cure require it, to these may be added fresh Fats, old Marrows, Muscilages, one, two, or more together, which seeing they are accounted of as Butter, should be in the same proportion prescribed.

Note also, that sometimes, though seldom, powders are added, *viz.* half a dram of them to a dram of Oyl.

2. Or else (contrary to the opinion of some which wil not admit of wax, with which it may commodiously be made,) it is made of convenient oyls and wax; as let an ounce of Oyl have one dram of wax; or which is usually done, wax, *q. s.* but generally the oyls are prescribed to 4 or 6 ounces; wax, *q. s.* make a *Liniment*, to which as is said, you may add a powder, which is usual.

3. Or else some officinal unguent is prescribed double to the oyl, to which may also be added the powder if you wil.

Generally a *Liniment* doth not exceed four, 6, or 8 ounces.

The USE and FORM, Rx. &c. Make a Liniment; with which anoint the part affected, either after fomentation, if that hath preceded, or otherwise.

The *UTILITY*: they are for the most part paregorical, to ease paine coming from distemper, either hot or cold, to relax parts condensed, to soften them that are hardned, to help tumours, wearines (for which they were of old called ἄκονα) the hardnesse of the Spleen, Liver; to relax the parts, as the womb in hard birth, in the stone, and to digest and discuss in-

flam-

flammations; they are also made to heat, moisten, or dry, though unguents are more effectual; and to cool, the Embrocation is better.

CHAP. IX.

Of Oyntments.

THe Arabians *called Cerecloth and Oyntment by the same name, and now adayes they usually confound unguents with Liniments, though an oyntment properly be a topical Medicine, of a mean consistence between a Liniment and a Cerecloth, much like hard Honey, made of Oyls, Powders, and Wax for divers uses.*

In it three things are to be considered, *Composition, Use,* and *Utility.*

As to the *COMPOSITION* in general, they wil have it made of three several substances, Oyl, VVax, and powder, in this proportion, that the whole masse may contain 4 ounces, half a pint, or a pint, according to the greatnes of the part, and length of the use; and this proportion of each in *general* is used; to oyl an ounce, wax two drams; powder one dram; but in special 'tis thus made diversly.

1. Either without fire and wax against the common opinion, by that way which they cal nutrition, and is prepared by beating things together, as *Oyntment of Litharge,* & *de Bolo,* which they cal *Nutritum.*

But this sort of *Nutritum* is made of an Oyl, a fit Liquor, and a Powder.

Oyl

Oyl is taken either alone variously according to the scope; or else with it are joyned either other things equivalent, one, two, or more; the powder is for the most part mineral, burnt, and washed, &c. of which afterwards.

The *Liquor* is the juyce of Leaves, or vinegar, if the intention bears it.

Of these three consists *nutritum*, whose proportion is often recited, but usually only the quantity of the powder is set down; as *for example*, to one or two ounces of powder, of the Oyl and Liquor, *q. s. viz.* as much as the powder can drink up.

And this is the *FORM* of *Nutritum*, R. &c. *viz.* the powder with the Oyl, or those things that are equivalent, one or two, &c. *q. s.* let them be beaten strongly in a marble mortar with a leaden pestle against Ulcers, leisurely powring to your convenient Liquor by little and little, so make an oyntment.

2. Or with fire, which is most usual in practice, which manner is most received and plainest; and is prepared of oyl, (or its like) and wax; the oyl being defined for its quantity to two, three, or four ounces, but the Wax, *q. s.* yet its proportion appears as above.

3. Or (which is more compound, and also received in use, and at the first mentioned) of oyl, Wax, and Powder in proportion aforesaid, which is to be observed in hot Oyntments, in which sometimes you may prescribe a dram and a half of powder to one ounce of Oyl; but in cold oyntments as *Unguent. de tutia, & de siccativum rubrum*, you may see to one ounce of oyl, half an ounce of powder, contrary to the rule.

But be it as it will, in hot ointments ye may prescribe to one ounce of oyl, one dram, or a dram and a half of powder, and the wax indefinitely, *q.s.*

Note that also officinal Ointments are sometimes mixed to one ounce, and one ounce and a half, &c.

4. Or which is very usual and effectual, of Juices and oyls, which must boyl to the consumption of the Juices, neer this proportion of oyl, four, six or eight ounces, according to the use and part, as often aforesaid, and as much of the juices, or something less, to which afterwards is added either wax alone, *q.s.* or together with that a proper powder in the aforesaid proportion to the oyls, or sometimes over and above; some officinal ointment to two ounces, may also be joyned with them.

5. Or (which also is usual) of an officinal unguent, a powder, oyl, wax, unguent to two, three or four ounces; powder to half an ounce, or six drams, oyl and wax is said, *q.s.*

6. Or sometimes without any other addition, an unguent of the shops is alone prescribed to four ounces, and six drams, &c.

The *USE* and *FORM*, is as the liniment, as to the *manner* either warm, hot, or cold as the intention requires; and it is often prescribed, let there be added at the time of using at a little vinegar, especially in cooling ones, to help it to penetrate; so also in heating unguents, you may add *Aqua vitæ*.

The *Time* of using it is various according to the several indications.

The *UTILITY* is large, and extends it self

to all parts, and affections which do not easily bear other remedies, or when we would deal more effectually than can be done by oyl; 'tis used to alter diversly in the first and second qualities, to mollifie, digest, and cleanse, &c.

Animadversions.

Note, concerning that common rule, by which for one ounce of Oyl two drams of Wax are taken, and one dram of powder, as *Galen* also appointed, it is valid in heating Ointments, in which the powders nevertheless reach to a dram and a half, but in cold Ointments it is not observed in dispensatories, which few make; nor in Ointments which are to cleanse, dry, replenish, and cicatrize Ulcers, which for the most part consist of Minerals, *and are weighty*. in which you shal (if you examine) observe that to one ounce of powder, there is of oyl two ounces; wax, half an ounce, five or six drams. And of this sort Mineral powders are, *red Lead, Tutty, Lead, terra sigillata*, Bole, *lap. Calaminaris, Cerussa*, Litharge, which two last for the most part make the basis, and are prescribed three times as much as the others.

But in the composition of an Ointment these things are to be esteemed for Oyl, and are equivalent with it, as divers Fatts, Grease, Marrow, Butter, œsipus, Muscilage, Honey, Turpentine, and such like; all which are accounted of as Oyl, and therefore the quantity of other things is to be proportioned to them as to Oyls, but if you prescribe both oyl and other things equivalent, they are usually added alike, or more or lesse as you see occasion. Con-

Concerning wax, in hot Ointments choose yellow; in cooling, the white; equivalent to it are gums, as Ammoniack, Bdellium, Myrrh, &c. and therefore the consideration of them is to be had in the Composition; and mark this, that in winter lesse, in summer more Wax is to be prescribed than the rule allows of.

As to the powders, they may be of all kind of things, but commonly they are taken out of vegetables, as Roots, Woods, Herbs dryed, Juices thickned, Raisins and gums that may be powdered, seldom of Minerals, unless in cooling Ointments, where we must dry, cleanse, &c. and chiefly in external uses; &c. as Ulcers, &c. in hot Ointments never, and very seldom of animals, because they are scarce powderable; for those things taken from them are rather to be melted, as grease, marrow, &c.

CHAP. X.

Of a Cerecloth.

IT hath its name from Cera *Wax, and it also called* Ceroneum, *though now adayes Chyrurgeons call Plaisters by that name; at first it was made of Oyl and Wax onely, but now adayes they commonly confound the name with Unguents, as* Ceratum album, Refrigerans, *or the white cooling Cerecloth; and* Ceratum santalinum, *or Cerecloth of Saunders, which are Unguents, and are now called Cerecloths.*

But properly it is a Medicine of a meane consistency between an Ointment and a plaister, harder than that, softer then this.

'Tis *COMPOUNDED* in *general* of an Oyl, a powder, and wax, in this proportion; Oyl one ounce, powder one dram, or a dram and half, wax half an ounce.

But *in special*,

1. Either properly, as of old, of wax, oyl, (from whence the name) in the aforesaid proportion; but because *Galen* in his cooling Ointment to one ounce of oyl puts but two drams of wax, it makes it meerly an Ointment: and that which he sets down ten of Method; where for one ounce of oyl he puts three ounces, and calls his solid cearcloth, is absolutely a plaister, perhaps he more regarded the matter of the Medicine then the form: but the order should be as aforesaid, for one ounce of oyl, half a ounce or 6 drams of wax.

As to the *quantity*; the proportion of the whole masse of a cerecloth is to be defined by the bigness of the part, and the continuance of the use, and is usually to eight ounces, or lib. 1. &c. and for private use three ounces wil serve for a large cerecloth; two ounces for a moderate one; or one ounce for a less.

2. Or more improperly, besides wax and oyl, (of which the cerecloth of the Antients is added, 1. Things equivalent to wax only, oyl only, or of both, with the same caution, and in the same quantities there mentioned. 2. Or powders only, of which we have said the cerecloth is usually made, in this proportion, oyl one ounce; powder, one dram, one dram and a half, some-

sometimes two or three drams, but then so much of the wax is to be abated. 3. Or of the aforesaid equivalent things and powders together.

3. Or of officinal plaisters melted in oyl, *viz.* when the part grieved cannot otherwise suffer it, then of the plaister two, three, or four ounces, oyl *q. s.* make a cerecloth.

4. It may be made of all those things of which an oyntment is made; onely observe the due consistencie, and the porportion now set down.

The *USE* and *FORM* is as of Plaisters, to be spreadon a Leather, or cloth.

The *UTILITY* is diverse in general, lest they should drain off without benefit, or the vir tues of it be dissipated, or when the grieved parts will not suffer the hardness of a plaister which they require, as usually in Fractures, or when soft parts in regard of their bending cannot admit a plaister, as in affections of the Liver, Stomack, Spleen, for which they are usually made in obstructions of the Spleen, for the womb, bones broken or out of joynt, hardness of the bowels, burstness, &c. They are also made where we would heat, moisten, relax, mollifie, concoct, digest, ripen; they may also be made to dry and bind, seldom to cool; for the cooling cerecloth of *Galen* is an oyntment.

CHAP. XI

Of a Plaister.

Ointments, Cerecloths, and Plaisters, as they agree in virtues, so they differ as much in consistence. A Plaister therefore is a topical Medicine, thicker in consistence than the other, but clammy, so that spread on a Linnen, or Leather, it may stick fast to the skin. The *Arabians* for the most part call them Cereclothes; the ancient Greeks called them Plaisters, from ἐμπλάσσω to shape or mould, or from their Emplastick or sticking quality.

And it is twofold, Officinal and Magisterial of which at present.

The Magisterial is *Compounded* (to be brief) of the same things of which an Ointment is; of oyl, wax, things equivalent, a powder, or some or more or all of them, neer this proportion, wch is very doubtful amongst Authors, who for one ounce of Oyl take neer three drams of powders, four ounces of wax; in which you wil find no firm example; therefore take it thus.

For a plaister less hard, take of oyl one ounce, powder half an ounce, wax one ounce.

For a harder plaister, take oyl one ounce, powder six drams, wax an ounce and a half, which is generally used.

For the hardest plaister, oyl one ounce, powder six drams, or one ounce, wax two ounces; for when they treble the wax to the oyl,

must understand it is when there is none, or little powders; and they that appoint the wax fourfold to the oyl, have no example in the dispensatories for it.

But in special 'tis made of oyl, wax, and powder, as is said in an unguent, those things being added (if the scope permit) which are clammy, as Rosin, Turpentine, Pitch, Gums; in defining the proportion of which we must consider whether they be equivalent to the Wax or Oyls, so shal you easily judge them: but whatsoever they are, where *Turpentine* can be admitted, let it be prescribed, because 'tis clammy, which is required in a plaister; as also gums, if the scope require it.

2. Or of Oyls, Juice, Powders, Wax, and things equivalent if need be: see the Ointment.

3. Or of an officinal plaister, powders, wax, and oyl, and generally *Turpentine* neer this proportion of the plaister an ounce and a half, or two ounces of the powder, half an ounce or six drams; wax and oyl *q. s.* adding a little *Turpentine*, or omitting them, prescribe it to be incorporated with *Turpentine*, *q. s.*

4. Or else an officinal plaister is prescribed alone in a fit proportion for the part, &c.

5. Or sometimes gums onely are melted with a hot pestle, and spread on a Leather, to 6 drams, or one ounce, as usually in the suffocation of the mother; there may also be added powders, and oyls.

6. Or sometimes powders of appropriat things may be prescribed to 6 drams to be made up with ship-pitch to an ounce and half, or *Turpentine q. s.* to which may be added gums to one ounce.

The *USE* and *FORM*, &c. &c. with, &c. make a plaister, which spread on Leather, and apply, being first anointed with oyl, or sprinkled with powder if you would not have them cleave too fast. But the figure of the plaister is prescribed in relation to the part, as for the head like a *T*; for the stomack like a *Scutcheon*; for the spleen, longish; for the Womb round; for the reins square.

The *UTILITY*: it was invented that the virtues of the medicine might stick to the longer, and not vanish: they are profitable to heat, strengthen, dry, concoct, ripen, for they increase heat by stopping the pores of the skin; they also digest wel, and draw out things fixed in the body, by a drawing quality; they are also useful to mollifie hardnesses, to strengthen, heal and cleanse Ulcers, to dry and cicatrize, for fractures also, seldom to cool, unless they be sometimes prescribed of binders and repellers to stop fluxes

CHAP. XII.

Of a Spanadrap.

THey call that so, when the cloth is plaistry on both sides; usually they are called tela Gaalteri, *perhaps from the inventor; but 'tis nothing else than linnen worn soft with age, in the form of a swath, or otherwise, dipped into a liquid sort of plaister, then taken out, and spread at the ful bredth, afterwards when 'tis cold made smooth.*

'Tis

'Tis Compounded,

1. Either of a fit plaister, adding (if you will) a little oyl, if it be hard, in which old cloth is dipped, *&c.*

2. Or according to the indication 'tis prescribed fresh, and that for the most part to stop rheums, and dry; of binders, as *Bole, terra sigillata, sanguis draconis, balaustines, Roses, Mastick*: astringent oyl, as of *Mirtles, &c.* and *Wax.* Or if it be to clense Ulcers, incarnate, cicatrize, or for fractures, of fit powders, oyl, wax, or things equivalent, of which this plaister consists. And the proportion of them is answerable to the proportion in the softer sort of plaisters; for the most part of oyl, 8 ounces; powders 4 ounces; wax, 8 ounces; and if you admit of the equivalent things, 'tis easie to define their quantity; let the cloth that is to be dipped be prepared in pieces 3 or 4 fingers broad, and of a fit length.

The USE and FORM, &c. and make a Spanadrap for the arms, thighs, leggs, for they are fittest for those parts; they may also be applyed to other parts, as Ulcers, but then a plain form will serve, whereas for the others they must be like an expulsive ligature.

The UTILITY: they are fit for the knitting of broken bones, to strengthen the parts, cleanse Ulcers, heal and cicatrize them, to hinder the courses of the humors to the Leggs, especially those that breed or feed Ulcers, in which respect they may properly be called intercepting Medicines, and be used for expulsive Ligatures; they are chiefly dedicated to the arms, Leggs, Thighs, and also other parts afflicted either with Ulcers,

or

or flux of Rhume: Hither may also be referred those Cere-cloths, that are for beautifying either of hands or face, to get the favor of Girls, made of fit things; thus is made an excellent one; ℥ of *Chalk finely ground*, one ounce, *oyl of white poppy* three ounces, *Camphire* one dram, *Borax* one dram and a half; *Virgins Wax often washed*, three ounces, or *q.s.* make a Cere-cloth for cleansing the face, against the redness and paleness of it.

CHAP. XIII.

Of a Cataplasme.

IT is the *Malagma* of the Ancients, a Topical soft medicine, almost of the consistency of a Poultis, prepared for divers uses.

It is *COMPOUNDED* divers ways.

1. Either (which is most usual) of the muscilage of divers parts of plants, to which are after added either oyls alone, or with Powders usually, and that to this proportion: Let there be of Muscilage, or that matter that is driven thorow the strainer, ten drams, or *lib* 1. of powders one, two, three, or four ounces; oyl or things equivalent, three ounces or four ounces; or else you may express only the quantity of the equivalent things, and set down of oyl, *q.s.* so that the whole Cataplasme do not exceed, *lib.* one and a half; it may be much less, according to the bigness of the part, and use.

As to the *Muscilage*, it is made in respect of the quality, of boyled roots, especially those that

that be fatty, as *Marshmallows, Lillies*, &c. leaves, seeds, fruits, especially; to be prescribed in a quantity as for the fomentation, then to be boyled in a fit Liquor, after stamping all thorowly, and driving them thorow a hair strainer; or particularly because a Cataplasme is commonly used after a Fomentation, the residency of the decoction that is made is prescribed to be beaten in a Morter, and to *lib.* 1. of that pulp those things aforesaid are to be added.

The Powders in relation to their *quality* are pulse, as the *flower of barley, beans, linseed, fenegreek-seed*, and these alone; or also the powders of other things, as to discuss, Ireos, Cummin, Camomil flowers, &c. and these either alone, or both sorts together, in the aforesaid proportion.

2. Or sometimes of fruits, ripe or unripe, as Apples, Pruner, Quinces, &c. roasted under the embers, or boyled in a fit liquor, and bruised, adding fit powders in the quantity aforesaid, as in the flux of the belly, and dysentery; it is made with the pulp of Quinces, and astringent powders: so for the eyes made of apples. See *Collirium*.

3. Or sometimes, in fluxes of the belly, vomiting, and to strengthen the stomack a slice of bread steeped in wine, and toasted hot, is prescribed, which being sprinkled with one ounce or two ounces of an astringent strengthening powder, let it be applied to the stomack.

Hither belongs the crumbs of white bread steeped in milk to half a pint, to which is added two yolks of eggs, half an ounce of Saffron, and *q. s.* of oyl fit for the purpose, and is applied for a Cataplasm in pains.

4. Or

4. Or (as Chyrurgions do) of astringent powders to one ounce or two ounces, made up with the white of an egg, which they lay on locks of hemp or bolsters of linnen rags, and apply to parts wounded, and Physitians also apply it to the belly in Fluxes.

The *VSE* and *FORM*, &c. make a Cataplasm, let it be spread in a folded linnen cloth, and applied.

And note this, that tis convenient to foment the part first with the decoction, in which the Cataplasme was boyled; it uses to be applied once or twice a day.

The *VTILITY*; they are applied chiefly to ease pain in parts inflamed or others, to soften hardnesses, to ripen humors and turn them to matter, to digest & dissolve the cause of inflammations, to discuss windinesse; they heat rather than cool; yet they are usually prescribed of astringent things to stop Fluxes; and are profitably made to provoke urine, of Pellitory of the wall, and oyle of Scorpions, applied to the bottom of the belly, for they relax, mollifie, and empty powerfully.

To Cataplasmes *may be referred that which is usually called a* Pultis.

It differs from a Cataplasm in nothing else, saving that that is prepared of the muscilage of things boyled to pap, and this is usually made of the flowry part of things boyled to the consistence of a *Pultis*, from whence its name.

And it is *COMPOVNDED*,

1. Either of the Flower of Pulse to four

ounces boyled in a convenient liquor to which afterwards are added oyls, or if the scope requires grease or some other thing equivalent to oyle to three ounces, or four ounces.

2. Or of the crumbs of white bread as before for an easer of pain, as in the cataplasme, and to ripen.

3. Or of a convenient mucilage and powders, and oyles, but this is rather a cataplasme, see before.

The *USE* and *FORME* as in a cataplasme, The *UTILITY* is cheifly for paines, to digest and dissolve, see the Cataplasme.

CHAP. XIV.

Of Rubifiers.

THese couched under the several names of *Dropax*, *Sinapismus*, *Vesicatories*, and *Phenigmus*, differ little or nothing in form from Cere-cloths, Plaisters, and Cataplasmes; they only differ in their effect, and in general may be called Rubifiers, though this name properly belong to that called *Phenigmus*; of all which briefly thus.

Dropax.

Dropax, properly called *Picatio* or *Pitching* by the Ancients to whom it was usuall, is a topicall medicine in forme of a plaister, seldom of a Cataplasme, prepared to fetch nourishment and life into the parts,

or

or to draw forth old paines and infirmities that are hard to be cured. This is Compounded,

1. Either more simply of pitch to an ounce, or an ounce and a half, and oyl half an ounce, or six drams melted together, and spread on a Leather.

2 Or more compound, powders that are hot in the first, second, or third degree, being added to the simple, as *Pepper, Pellitory of Spain, Ginger the dungs of living creatures, &c.* to half an ounce, or six drams.

3. Or as 'tis at this day made both for the attraction and discussion of humours, two several wayes, 1. Of the powder of hot things, spices, and things of thin parts, to six drams. *Mustard-seed*, and *Pidgeons dung* to one ounce, are made up with pitch and turpentine, *q. s.* make a plaister for the mould of the Head. 2. To the same purpose 'tis made of *Emplastrum de Mnscalaginibus* 3 ounces, with one ounce of the aforesaid powders, oyl of Ireos, *q. s.* make a plaister like the letter T for the mould of the head, or let them be incorporate with Turpentine, and make a plaister, &c. they commonly (but amiss) cal them vesicatories or blistring Medicines, for they operate without blisters: and 'tis to be done for the most part before the blistering Medicines, and sometimes after them, in contumacious affections of the head, to draw the morbifical causes from within, digest and empty them, which said use of the *Dropax* is now most frequent, and also most profitable.

The *USE* of the *Dropax* of the Antients was to apply it hot to any part, the hairs being shaved off, and pul it off again before twere quite cold,

pul

and this was done often till the part were become red, which is usually the bounds of applying the *Dropax*; then is it to be left off, and that being removed, if it be to draw nourishment or heat to the part, least either should breath forth, the part is to be anointed with oyle of Camomil, that the pores may be shut.

The *USE* of our *Dropax*, is chiefly for stubborn affections of the head, and tis spread on a leather like a plaister, and cut in the shape of the letter T, and applied to the mould of the head, the hair being first shaved off, from which you may easily conceive the *FORME* of prescribing it. It may also be applied to other parts in another convenient forme

The *UTILITY* of the *Dropax* of the Ancients, is to nourish & revive parts extenuated and languishing; nourishment, heat, and spirits being by this meanes called forth; and now adayes also we imitate them profitably in parts overcool'd and paralyticall. They used them also for other things; to dry moyst bodyes, helpe cold and rebellious affections; it draws forth humors, that lie deep, and discusseth them; tis profitable in the Palsie, Catharrs, and affections arising from thence, Phthisis, &c. Failing sicknesse, Head-ach, and in other affections of like sort where there is need of drawing forth powerfully, and therefore they were called of old μετασυγκριστικὰ or drawing discussers.

The *UTILITY* of our *Dropax* doth correspond with the latter of these, and is chiefly used in cold and diuturnal affections of the head or neither parts flowing from thence; for it discusseth and draweth powerfully those morbifical causes that lurk in the brain.

A

A Vesicatory.

The Antients had in use a Sinapisme, usually in form of a Cataplasme, made of Sinapi, *viz. Mustard-seed (from whence its name) which if it were milder, so that it would only make the skin red, was properly called* Phœnigmus; *but the stronger sort that raised blisters is called a Vesicatory.*

A Sinapisme was anciently made of the pulp of figgs steeped til they were soft, and the powder of Mustard, neer this proportion: for a strong one, one part of figgs, two parts of Mustard seed; for a moderate one, ana, of each like quantities; for a weak one, two parts of figgs, and one part of Mustard-seed; it was applyed to the part til it were red, from whence comes the name of a Phœnigme, as the name of a Sinapisme from the composition.

But now instead of those Sinapismes Vesicatories are used, so called from their raising blisters, which are also by some called Phœnigmes.

The Vesicatory now in use is COMPOUNDED,

1. Either in the form of a plaister, and that two wayes, 1. Of an officinal blistring plaister, if it be extant, to an ounce, or an ounce and a half, according to the largeness of the part. 2. Or else take 2 or three ounces of *Emplastrum de Muscilaginibus*, and two or three drams of *Cantharides*; let them be incorporated with Turpentine and spread on a leather, to make a blistring plaister.

2. Or in the form of a Cataplasme, which is most

most usual, of two ounces of old leavens, and two drams of *Cantharides*, with *Aqua vitæ* or Vinegar make a paste for a Vesicatory.

But this proportion will serve for a reasonable large place, which otherwise is to be lessened; for if it be (for example) to be applied behinde the ears, one ounce of stuff will suffice.

Note that sometimes there are added of the sharper sort of powders, as pepper, ginger, *Euphorbium*, to one ounce, or one ounce and a half, Mustard seed to half an ounce.

The *USE* and *Form*, &c. make a Vesicatory of a fit bigness, let it be applyed, &c. till it raise blisters, which are to be pricked thorow with a needle, and suffered to run as long as you see fit, and a Colewort leaf a little scalded at the fire, daubed with oyl is to be applied, so suffer it to remain open till the whole humour be evacuated.

The *UTILITY*, they are generally used to empty, withdraw by revulsion, and derive divers humors; they are also profitable for humors that are fixed and clammy, so that they cannot be discussed either by mollifiers, or attenuators; for being thus melted, they are easily drawn forth, and dissolved; they also help in the Dropsie, Sciatica, the lasting paines of the head and joynts, all cold stubborn affections, and as it were deplorable; it is an admirable revulsive Medicine, famous in Catarrhs, falling on divers parts; useful in stirring up those that be over-sleepy, or lethargical, they also help all poisonous stingings, carbuncles, buboes, &c. and are rather a remedy for phlegmatick diseases than the cholerick.

CHAP. XV.

Of Sacculets, or little Baggs.

FRom their effect they may be counted diverse, viz. discussive or dissolving, strengthening, Anodine or pain easing, mollifying, &c.

What soever it be, three things are to be considered in it, *Composition, Use,* and *Utility.*

In the *COMPOSITION* is to be considered the *matter* of which these Sacculets are usually prepared, and that *which contains* the matter.

The *MATTER*, as to its quality, are divers simples convenient for the present scope, shred smal and brussed, as Roots, Barks, Woods, Leaves, Flowers, Seeds, Spices, Gums; one, two, or more, according to your scope.

In relation to their quantity, the bigness and proportion of the part to which it is to be applyed, should define the measure and weight of them, as for example, for the heart, an ounce, or an ounce and a half wil suffice, for the stomack two or three ounces; for the whole belly a greater quantity is required; therefore the several quantities of each simple are to be contrived that the whole composition exceed not that quantity that is convenient for the part it is to be applyed to.

That which is to *CONTAIN* this matter, is a Linnen cloth, or silken one, especially for the more noble parts; of which are made Sacculets of divers shapes, square, Oval, or of some other figure, according to the form of the part; they which

which are to be applyed to the head, ought to be of the shape of a Cap; they for the stomack scutcheon fashioned; for the Liver like a half moon; for the Spleen like an ox tongue.

Note, that first sometimes the matter is to be terrified in a Frying-pan, before it be put into the bagg, and be generally renewed with *Wine*, or *Aqua vitæ*, *q. f.* especially where we would discuss.

2. The more pretious or finer powders, or they which are prescribed for the more noble parts, should be sprinkled among sleive silk, or cotton, that they may lie the softer to the body.

3. Lest the matter should clod, and fal in lumps or to one place, it should be stitched through, and quilted in divers places.

The *USE*, as to the *manner*; sometimes these Sacculets are applyed dry to the part, as they which are applyed to the head and heart. And sometimes they are wet with some liquor, and that after two sorts; for either they are sprinkled with Wine, Vinegar, or some other *Liquor* to accelerate their operation; and then are laid on a hot stone or tile, til they are warmed, and then applyed: Or else they are boyled a little in some fit Liquor, after pressed out, and applyed to the place; therefore they are commonly provided by pairs, that so they may be still applyed hot by turns.

As to the *time* when, and how long they are to be worn, or used, the condition of the affection must teach that.

The Form appears by what is aforesaid.

The UTILITY: in general they are good to heat, dry, attenuate, discuss, draw and strengthen, to ease paines, cal forth and consume humours and windinesse.

But in *special*, your Cephalical Sacculets are used to divers affections of the head, especially the cold, long-lasting and flatuous, and to prevent distillations *&c:* those for the breast are applyed in the Pleurisie that is spurious and proceeds from windinesse, and other paines of the breast; to the short rib-region in obstructions and swellings of the Liver and Spleen; and to the region of the reins in the pain of them to the belly; in the cholick and iliack passion, *&c.* Lastly *S*acculets are applyed to any parts for Schirous, phlegmaticks, windy swellings, to ease paine as in the gout.

THE

THE SECOND BOOK.

The Second SECTION.

Of the proper Remedies of certain parts.

CHAP. I.

Of a Frontall.

IN general it may be called any form of Medicine applyed outwardly to the forehead, but in particular it now signifies a topical cooling, or appeasing, or restbringing Medicine, made of cooling cephalical things, bruised and included in a linnen bagg four or five fingers bredth: this the Greeks cal ἀναλλημμα; though that word signifie properly a Medicine made of sticking things, as the finest flower, and binding things as bole, Sanguis Draconis, Acacia, mixed with Vinegar and the white of an Egge, and applyed to the forehead against bleeding at nose, or to stop the course of humours flowing to the eyes.

In our usual Frontal we consider three things *Composition, Use,* and *Utility.*

'Tis COMPOUNDED 1. in a dry form, which is properly a Frontal; as to its *quality,* 'tis usually of the flowers of *Violets, Roses, water Lillies, white Poppy seed, and Lettice seed.*

As to their *quantity,* the flowers use to be prescribed to 3 or 4 pug. the seeds to half an ounce.

Note, that sometimes to these are added to strengthen and discuss flowers of *Camomil,* and Melilot, ana, p. half; the seeds of *Coriander* and *Dil,* ana, half a dram.

Note also, that sometimes these Frontals are made onely of the leaves of Lettice and Henbane, to 2 or 3 handfuls bruised, and sprinkled with oyl of Violets and Vinegar, or sometimes one handful of these are added to the former.

2. Or else in a moister form, and that 1. in the form of a Liniment of *Unguentum Populeon,* or of *Roses,* to 6 drams, oyls of Violets, &c. half an ounce, or of Unguentum Populeon only. 2. In the form of a Cataplasm, of Leaves, Flowers, Seeds, as aforesaid, adding a little oyl and Vinegar to it.

The USE and Form of the dryer sort is, R. &c. bruise them, and fold them up in a thin linnen cloth; make a Frontal, which either moistened with the vapor of Vinegar, and sprinkled with it, is to be applyed to the forehead and temples at the hour of sleep.

That of the Liniment is, R. Let them be anointed on the forehead and temples at the houre of sleep, and after four or five hours let it be wiped off, and renewed.

That

That of the Cataplasm, &c. &c. Make it like a Cataplasm, which foulded between a doubled Linnen cloth, let it be applyed to the forehead and temples.

The UTILITY is chiefly to cool against the burnings of the head, as in *Fevers* and the *Frensie*, to procure sleep in long wakefulness; which in those affections do much prey on the strength, and trouble the minde; also to repress vapours in Fevers, sometimes to repel, and for paines of the head, &c.

CHAP. II.

Of an Oxirrhodine.

SOme refer this to the Epithemes, some to the Embrocations, taking its name from Vinegar, and Oyl of Roses; yet seeing 'tis a form of Medicine which seems wholly dedicated to the head, I wil adjoyn it for the liquid Frontall.

'Tis Compounded, 1. Either more simply of four parts of *Oyl of Roses*, and one of *Vinegar*, beaten wel together, so that the whole composition do not exceed 8 ounces, or *lib:* 1. at most.

2. Or more compound of oyl of Roses, and other cephalical oyls, with Rose vinegar, and cooling cephalical waters to this proportion, of oyls 4 or 6 ounces; Vinegar, 2 or 3 ounces; Waters, 4 ounces: let them be beaten wel together.

3. Or instead of waters with Juyces of the same things, prescribed in the same quantity.

The *Vse* and *Form*, &c. beat all wel together, let Linnen clothes dipped and wet with

this mixture be applyed to the head, forehead, and temples, changing them often.

The *UTILITY*; 'Tis excellent in the frensie, and dilinium, or ilness of head, to repel thin humours, and vapours from the head; and in burning Fevers where you fear an alienation of the mind.

CHAP. III.

Of a quilt Cap.

THis is dedicated to the cold and moist affections of the head.

'Tis *Compounded* in relation to its quality, of cephalical simples wel scented, either roots, dryed leaves, flowers, woods, spices, (as *Cloves and Cinnamon, &c.*) seldom of seeds; and of gums (as *Benzoin,*) and sometimes Styrax, becaule easily powdered, *Musk and Ambergreese* may be added for the richer sort.

And this is their usual proportion, of roots one ounce, dryed Leaves two or three handfuls, which may also be prescribed by weight to half an ounce, 6 drams; flowers, to p. 2, 3. which may also be appointed by weight, to two or three drams, or half an ounce; gums to one or two drams; Musk half a scruple, or a scruple, *&c.* so that the whole composition do not exceed three or four ounces.

Note, that some wil add those sweet powders which we cal *Violet powder* and *Cyprus powder* to half an ounce.

The USE and FORM, R, *&c.* Make a powder, which mix with fine cotton, or sleive-silk, so bast it, and quilt it between two silks, and

and make a quilt to be worn on the head, or sewed to the inside of the Cap; sometimes two are prescribed, and then the quantity of the powder is to be doubled, and 'tis said, make two Caps, of which let him wear one in the night, and the other sowed to his cap for the day, and when they grow fatty with sweat, *&c.* let them be left off, and new ones made.

The *VTILITY*: is famous in cold affections of the brain, & moist ones also, from whence spring divers diseases of the nether parts; but they are chiefly prescribed after general purgings to draw away the relicks of the morbifical matter for cold and lasting affections of the head it self, for Catarrhs, to retain, consume, and stop all defluxions; to cherish the animal spirits, and to strengthen the head and brain, (therefore they ought to be medicaments of thin parts, that they may the easier penetrate the skul;) least it should either receive or ingender new impurities, *&c.*

CHAP. IV.

Of a Collyrium.

IT *is a topical eye-Medicine, addicted particularly to the affections of the eyes, called a* Collyrium *by the* Greeks *from its virtue to stop rhewmes.*

And it is two-fold; the moist which is now onely called a Collyrium; *and the dry, properly called Seise by the* Arabians.

The

The moyſt Collyrium.

This is twofold; the Liquid, which in form of a Liquor is dropped into the eyes; and the groſſer which is anointed on, of the conſiſtency of honey or a Liniment.

But vapors are not ſaid to be any of the ſorts of a Collyrium; *which ſeeing they are nevertheleſs preſcribed in affections of the eyes, I will firſt ſpeak of them: ſo that I ſhall account a moiſt Collyrium threefold: one like vapors, another as liquor, the laſt like honey.*

The vaporous is not ſo much a form of a Collyrium, as of a Medicine preparing the humors and eyes, that the vertues of other things may be received to the better purpoſe; as in ſuffuſions, ſpots, &c. It is alſo preſcribed by it ſelf to diſcuſs, which is altogether the beſt way, as alſo when the ſight is to be cleared, &c.

Tis *COMPOSED* or made, 1. of the breath of ones ſelf, or another, as of a boy having waſhed his mouth, and chewed fennel ſeed, &c. breathed into the eyes, which is often to be done, and continued ſometime, as need requires. 2 Or elſe may be preſcribed a decoction, to the quantity of a Cliſter, made of leaves, ſeeds, flowers, ſharpening the ſight, diſcuſſing and rarifying, and that in *white wine, often in water,* ſometimes the *urine of a boy Childe* being added to two ounces.

The *USE* and *FORM* of the decoction, R, &c. make a decoction in, &c. for a ſuffumigation, let him receive the vapor or fume of this to his eye, either through a narrow-mouthed Pot, or a Tunnel (other vents being cloſed) morn-

morning and night, long from meat, for ſo many days as there is need; afterwards let the eyes be fomented with a ſponge, dipped in the decoction, or with little bags filled with the ingredients, which let be applied warm by turns, for a quarter or half an hour.

The *UTILITY* is expreſſed: it may alſo be made to binde, as in the dilation of the apple or pupil of the eye, of convenient things, and in the running of the tears; but the firſt uſe is moſt frequent.

Theſe for a vaporous Collyrium.

The LIQUID one is abſolutely called a Collyrium, though antiently Collyriums were properly dry, in the forms of Troſchiſchs which they diſſolved in a fit liquor at the time of uſing them.

But tis *COMPOUNDED* diverſly. 1. Either of a diſtilled water alone, ſimple, or compound.

The ſimple may be preſcribed, either one, two or more to four ounces, make a *Collyrium*.

The Compound which is magiſterial, and chiefly addicted to digeſt, diſcuſs, cleanſe, ſharpen the ſight, and take away ſuffuſions, and is to be preſcribed by the Phyſitians, and is made in relation to its *quality*, of things that ſharpen the ſight, leaves, ſeeds, as alſo Cephalical heating things, as leaves, ſeeds, ſpices, as *Ginger*, *Pepper*, ſometimes adding *Gall*, the *Urine of a Young Boy*, *White Wine*, *Honey*, &c.

As to the *quantity*, let there be of ſight ſharpning leaves, *M.* ſix or M. eight; ſeeds one ounce & a half, or 2. ounc. Cephalical leaves, *M.* 2. ſpices half

halt an ounce, six drams, Gall two ounces, Urine *lib.* half, or *lib.* 1, 2. Honey *lib.* half, Wine *lib.* 2.

The *FORM*, &c. Let them steep eight days in a glass vessel, in a warm place, or horse dung: afterwards distil them in *Balneo Mariæ*; put the distilled water in a glass bottle, and keep it for your use; which is as that of others.

2. Of *Juices* onely, and chiefly of Leaves clarified and infused into the eyes, or applyed with linnen raggs wet in them.

3. Or of a *Decoction* onely, of Leaves, Seeds, Flowers, fit for the purpose to be prescribed in the quantity of a potion; for four ounces wil suffice for a *Collyrium*.

4. Or of an *infusion* onely, of metalline things, as of *Antimony* 1 dram, in 4 ounces of water, which is admirable to clarifie the sight, so also *gr.* 1. 2. 3. of Vitriol in Rose or Fennel water is admirable against the redness and pain of the eyes. Or else made of proper vegetables infused either in a distilled water, Juices, or a decoction, &c. to 4. or 6 ounces, the Liquor afterwards being strained, and filtrated, is to be kept in a glass for use.

5. Or of a *distilled water*, *Juice*, *Infusion*, *Decoction*, 2, 3, or all of these together, mixed according to your intention, to 3 or 4 ounces.

6. *Or other liquors* are used alone according to your scope, as *Wine*, *Water*, *whites of Eggs*, in paines, &c.

7. Or some convenient powder made of proper eye medicines added to the aforesaid Liquor, several or mixed.

As to the quantity of the powder, 1, 2 or 3 drams is to be the most; those that are strong should not exceed 1 dram, so with 4, 5, or 6 ounces of Liquor make a *Collyrium*.

Note

Note alſo 'tis beſt to ſtrain a *Collyrium* for the roughneſs of the powders, unleſs it be to ſcoure.

The *USE* and *FORM*; R. &c. make a *Collyrium*, a few drops of which, 2 or 3 is to be dropped into the greater corner of the eye, or and beſides (which ſeems beſt to me) apply a Linnen cloth dipped in the ſame Liquor to the eyes, and change them often, ſo let it be as it were a fomentation, or an Epitheme. Or when the Liquors are gentler, let the Patient lie forward, and apply the *Collyrium* in a cup fitted to the eye, ſo that it may as it were bath the whole eye.

The *VTILITY*, of the liquid moiſt one chiefly is to cool and quench the burnings of the eyes, to drive away paines and inflammations in the beginning; afterwards to diſcuſs them; alſo to repel and ſtay rhewms, to dry and conſume teares, to cleanſe off any filth from them, to ſharpen the ſight, and diſcuſs groſs humors. *Thus much for the liquid Collyrium.* Here follows

The COLLYRIUM *like Honey, 'tis ſo called becauſe 'tis of the conſiſtence of Honey, and that three-fold, in the form of a Liniment, a Pultis, and a Cataplaſme.*

The *Liniment faſhion Collyrium* is made, 1. Either of the powder of ſome fit things made into an *Alcobol*, and a fit thing to embody it withal, which is various according to the ſcope, as a *fit Muſcilage*, honey, butter, oyntment of Roſes, &c. according to your indications.

As to the *quantity*, let the whole compoſition be an ounce, *viz.* of powders, 2 or 3 drams, and half a ounce, or ſix drams of that with which they are imbodied.

2, Or without a powder of the muſcilage of

fit seeds, as of Quinces, &c. but the former way is the more usual.

The Cataplasm and Pultis is for the most part made onely to ease paines, and that of two ounces of the crumbs of white bread soaked in *q. s.* of milk, to which is added sometimes the muscilage of Fleawort, to half an ounce, Opium, gr. 3 &c. 2. Or of onely the pulp of a Pippin softened at the fire, or boyled in Milk, to two ounces. 3. Or of both together. 4. Or to repel, of the pulp of Quinces boyled to two ounces. 5. Orchiesly to discuss, after the manner of cataplasmes, of the muscilage made of the residence of the sight-sharpening decoction bruised and driven through the strainer; see the vaporous Collyrium.

The *USE* and *FORM* of the Liniment, Rx. &c. Make it like a Liniment, with which anoint the corners of the eyes, that it may leisurely penetrate to the inward parts. Or else it may be applied with a pencil to the eye-lids at the place affected.

Of the *Cataplasm*, Rx, make it like a Pultis, or a Cataplasme, lay it on a fit linnen cloth, wet in a fit liquor and apply it.

The *UTILITY* of the *Liniment* is special where we would help the affection of the eye-lids, or cleanse, to which purpose tis most usefull, and also to dry; it may profitably be used to discusse, and for pains, but then it is better in the form of a Pultis: *Collyriums* are made in this form that by this means the powders sticking the longer, may work more effectually on the part; and if there be any sharp medicines, they are thus allayd. The Cataplasm and Pultis are used

uſed only to eaſe pain; they may nevertheleſs be applied to diſcuſs, and repel, as aforeſaid.

Thus far of the moyſt Collyrium, here follows the dry.

The dry Collyrium.

This uſeth to be prepared two ways, in the form of powder, and of a Troſchiſch.

The POWDER *is made of ſimples, levigated into a very fine powder, and is properly called by the Arabians Seife.*

It is *COMPOUNDED* of Ohpthalmical ſimples reduced to a very ſubtle powder, called *Alcool*, to be preſcribed to half an ounce, or one ounce at moſt.

The *USE* and *FORM*, R, &c. Grind it on a ſtone with ſome convenient liquor, to a moſt ſubtle *Alcool*; after dry it, of which let *gr.* two or three be blown into the eye through a ſmall quill, after it let the eye-lid be gently rubbed for ſome ſpace: or elſe that Alcool may be mixed with ſome convenient Liquor, and ſo made into a Collyrium, or of it may be made a Liniment as aforeſaid.

The *UTILITY* is great, and chiefly to cleanſe off ſpots, ſuffuſions, &c. if powder only be blown in; as alſo to cicatrize or heal: or if it be diſſolved in Liquor, as is ſaid, it may be for divers uſes, though this be leſs uſual.

TROSCHISHS, are uſually made without ſaying in Troſchiſchs, of the Alcohool, of divers powders, to ſix drams, or one ounce at moſt, which are made up with a convenient Liquor. See Troſchiſchs.

The *USE* and *FORM*, R, &c, with, &c. make Troſchiſchs as big as Lupines, or Paſtills to

the

the weight of one dram, dry them in the shade, grinde one of them, dissolve it with the aforesaid things, to make a *Collyrium* or Liniment.

The *UTILITY*: they may be for any intention, seeing that these Troschiscus are onely a convenient form for preserving the virtues of the medicines, but they are generally used to dry and cleanse, &c. and for the inflammation of the eyes, with *Opium*, as *trosch. albi Rhasis*, which also are prevalent for the redness, to digest inflammations, diminish scars, and other intentions of like sort: In this form fit powders may be kept, which are ready at hand for use, either in a Liniment or Collyrium, or a powder according to the variety of the scope, of which before.

CHAP. V.

Of a Gargarism.

THis a Liquid Medicine dedicated to the affections of the Mouth, Gums, Jaws, Larinx, and sometimes of the head, by gargarizing as they call it, washing of the Jaws, and top of the throat, without swallowing it down.

'Tis *Compounded* of *WATERS*, and things to be dissolved.

The waters are distilled in *quantity* to a pint, or a pint and a half.

The things *to be dissolved*, are alwaies some fit syrup to three or four ounces, sometimes according to the scope, *Diamoron*, *Dianucum*, *Honey*,

so

to one ounce and a half, or two ounces; also sometimes some juice convenient for the affection, as Vinegar, Verjuice, in repellers to 2 or 3 ounces.

2. Or of waters and juices chiefly cooling, of the first sort 8 ounces, of the latter 4, with the aforesaid things that are to be dissolved.

3. Or (which is usual) of the decoction of divers parts of plants, according to your scope, more or fewer, neer the proportion of a Glister, made in a fit liquor, in *lib.* 1. or *lib.* 1 and a half, in which let the aforesaid things be dissolved.

The *USE* and *FORM*, &c. make a Gargarisme, with which wash the mouth often an hour before dinner and supper, or else at any time if need be, cold if to repel, warm if to digest.

The *VTILITY*, is various according to the variety of the affections, to repel in the beginning of inflammations, for every hot distemper of the mouth, for defluxions, to cleanse, to digest in inflammations, for the ill savour of the mouth, for divers affections of the Jaws and mouth. Sometimes though seldom 'tis made to draw phlegm out of the head, of the decoction of cutting, cleansing, cephalical things, of thin parts; but masticatories are better for this.

CHAP. VI.

Of an Apophlegmatisme.

IT is a sort of the Caput-purgiums, or head-purgers, as also is the Errhinum, dedicated to the phlegmatick affections of the braine, to draw forth forth flegme from it, from whence it hath its name: as for that which some do in calling them Masticatories, 'tis abusively, for there are liquid Apophlegmatismes, yet 'tis of late received for a practical use, because the solid form of an Apophlegmatisme is the the more usual, so that by the word Apophlegmatisme they simply understand a Masticatory, as you may easily perceive.

But be it as it wil, 'tis two-fold, dry and liquid.

This Form of Head-purging Medicines is properly called a Masticatory, but commonly called also an Apophlegmatisme.

'Tis COMPOUNDED or prescribed, 1. Of fit phlegm-purging simples; (see the matter) as usually (Pellitory of *Spaine*, &c.) steeped a night in an ounce or two of Vinegar, which let him chew in the morning.

2. Or else of the powder of the aforesaid sharp things of thin parts, to 3 drams, or half an ounce, which is mixed with wax, *q. s.* Or else with only Mastick; others do otherwise, but wax is most convenient, for so the powder holds the firmer together.

3 Or the aforesaid powder is included in a thin, but strong linnen cloth, and is tyed in a knot, for which usually one ounce of Mastick is taken

taken for a baſis, and 2 or 3 drams of other ſharper things, theſe are preſcribed, make them into little knots, &c.

The USE and FORM of the ſecond manner, R. &c. with &c. make pellets, or ſpetting balls, or globulets like great pils, or troſchiſchs in the form of Lupines, hazzle Nuts, *&c.* of the weight of 2 ſcruples, one dram, *&c.* Make chewable cakes, of which let him chew one, and rowle it up and down his mouth every morning, when his ſtomack is empty: and that for half an hour holding down his head, often ſpitting out that that diſſolves from the pellet; after let him waſh his mouth with warm water, wine, *&c.* that the relicks remaining may be waſhed often away; it may alſo be reiterated two hours before ſupper.

The *UTILITY*: 'tis ſingular after general evacuations; for the particular purging of the brain; it draws away the relicks of phlegmatick humors, eſpecially from the brain, and chiefly from the center and foremoſt ventricles of it, as alſo from the adjoyning parts to it, it alſo purgeth the parts neer the mouth as gums, jaws, teeth, (in the ach of which 'tis uſual) mouth, throat, and whethersoever the heat of it it can diffuſe it ſelf. Laſtly, it melts, cuts, and draws forth plegm, and is excellent in cold and inveterate affections of the brain.

The liquid Apophlegmatiſme.

It is like the Gargariſme, which may be called the purging gargariſme.

'Tis Compounded of the Decoction of Cephalical things that attenuate and cut, whether roots, leaves, seeds, flowers, neer the quantity of a gargarisme, adding also things that draw forth phlegme, to an ounce, an ounce and a half, or two ounces, made in wine or Mead.

Note, that it may be made more purgative by adding in the decoction *Senna*, *Carthamum*, and sometimes *Turbith*, to half an ounce, or 6 drams.

The quantity of it, and of the things to be dissolved is as in a Gargarisme.

The USE and FORM is the same; for it is really a purging gargarisme.

The *UTILITY* is the same as of the masticatory; yet because when gargarized, it enters farther into the Throat, and it also draweth farther from the almons of the ears, and ouse, and 'tis also thought to draw more powerfully from the brain.

CHAP. VII

Of Dentifrices.

THis Remedy though it seem onely beautifying, yet 'tis often prescribed by Physitians for other affections.

'Tis Composed, 1. Either in the form of water, with which either the teeth are washed, or else they are rubbed with a linnen with it; hither belong the spirits of *Vitriol*, and *Sulfure* in a smal quantity diluted in the water, with which the teeth

teeth may be rubbed. It marvelously cleanseth and whiteneth them, and preserves them from rotting: yet it must be done warily, for it makes them apt to break.

2. Or else in the forme of a liniment of six drams, or 1 ounce of powder with a *s. q.* of hony of Roses, so make it of the consistency of an Opiate or a Liniment.

3. Or in the form of Troschischs like a suppository, with which being dryed and hardened, let the teeth be rubbed; These are made of an ounce and a half, or two ounces of powder with the muscilage of gum dragant, *q. s.* make Troschischs like suppositories, and dry them.

The *USE* and *FORM*, R. &c. Make *&c.* with which either let the mouth be washed, *&c.* or anointed, or let the teeth be rubbed afterwards, let the the mouth be washed with a convenient liquor, water, wine, *&c.*

The UTILITY; 'tis prescribed chiefly to whiten the teeth, cleanse and fasten them, also to remedy the scates and rottenness of them, to strengthen and incarnate the gums, and defend them from defluxions:

Note, that as to the matter of them there is usually and profitably to cleanse, *Tartar, Coral, crust of bread burnt, Salt, Scuttle-bone, Pumice-stone, &c.* to which for the richer sort sweet smelling things, as *Musk, Ambergreese*, should be added.

CHAP. VIII.

Of Errhines, or Sneezing Medicines.

THis a Medicine in general which is drawn up in the nose, (from whence its name) either for affections of the head or the proper affections of the nostrils, to purge the first, to alter the others diversly, so that I may rightly esteem it two-fold, purging and altering.

The purging Errhine.

'Tis dedicated to purge the brain of divers vitious humours, which it doth either without sneezing, and then is called absolutely an Errhine, which they otherwise cal a headpurge, or with sneezing, and then is called a Sternutatory or sneezing Medicine.

Of that which is called absolutely an Errhine.

It emptieth the brain without sneezing, and in relation to its form is threefold, Liquid, soft, and solid.

The *Liquid* is compounded 1. Either of Juices onely of head-purgers, which is pressed out of 4 handfuls of the leaves bruised, and strained with four ounces of white Wine; this Liquor is kept in a glass bottle for use; this is otherwise prescribed thus more briefly. R. of the Juices newly drawn out of the leaves of green Herbs with white wine, *&c*, four ounces, eight ounces, seldom: 'tis prescribed to *lib:* 1. unless for a continual use, and in diets.

Note,

Note, that sometimes to make it the more cephalical, *Betony*, &c. may be joyned with it, or a little of some cephalical decoction, and that it may the more penetrate, one ounce of *Aqua vitæ* may be added.

2. Or altogether of a decoction of cephalical things, as the Apophlegmatisme is, the leaves of head-purgers being joyned, of which strained, take 6 or 8 ounces, in which either nothing is dissolved, or sometimes fit juyces to 2 or 3 ounces, *Aqua vitæ*, &c.

Note that some to purge the more wil dissolve purging opiates in it, but 'tis better to boyl some fit purger with the rest of the things.

The *USE* and *FORM*, R. &c. Make an Errhine, or a head-purge, keep it in a glass bottle; let it be used warm in the morning, two hours before dinner, or also before supper; snuff it up out of the palm of the hand; the mouth being ful of water, continue this 3 or 4 dayes, 3, or 4 times at once, or if a diet be appointed, let it be continued the whole time of the diet.

The *SOFT* Errhine is compounded 1: *In* the form of a Liniment of divers juyces, and oyl of Iroes, ana, two ounces, boyl them to the consumption of the juyces, add *wax*, *q. s.* make a Liniment, to which may be added a dram and a half of sharp powders: or which is best, half a scruple, or a scruple of *Elaterium*.

2. Or in the consistence of an Opiate, of two ounces of the aforesaid Juyces, Wine an ounce and a half, Honey, *q. s.* boyl it gently to the consistence of an opiate, N B, that besides sharp or or purging powders, as *Elaterium*, *Colocinthis* may be added to one scruple.

Note also that the Opiate may be made without Juices of two drams, or 3 drams of powder, honey, q.s.

The *USE* and *FORM*, ℞, &c. make &c. and with your finger or a feather, anoint the inside of your nostrils, and holding forwards your head, let the humors be drawn forth; 'tis best after it to wash the nostrils. *See Errhinum.*

The *SOLID* is *compounded*, 1. either in the form of a powder, of fit things to two drams, 3. drams, half an ounce. 2. or in a solid form, and is properly called a Nasal, of the powder of such like things, two or three drams; make it up with a fit mucilage, or turpentine, q.s. and *wax*, make a Nasal in the shape of a Pyramid.

The *USE* and *FORM* of the Powder, ℞, &c. blow up a little (as for example) half a scruple, or a scruple with a quil into the Nostrils. Of the Nasal thus, ℞, &c. make it in the figure of a Piramid, which being anointed with oyl, put it up in the Nostrils.

The *UTILITY* is after general purges, in affections of the head, especially the cold and lasting ones: and also in them that proceed from choler, and watrish humors, from whence often spring very sharp pains; and for all affections arising from the foulness of the brain; therefore in diets it is most usual and most profitable; it purgeth the foremost ventricles of the brain, and the meninges or coverings of it; but is warily to be prescribed in affections of the eyes.

The sneezing medicine.

'Tis COMPOUNDED of the Powder of sneezing simples, to one dram and a half, or 2. drams, for they are strong.

The

The Use and Form, &c. Make a fine powder, whose steam is either to be drawn into the Nostrils, or especially when cephalical things are mixed with it in equal quantity, a little, as gr. 1, 2, 3, by the help of a quil may be snuffed up in the morning, or at other times, when the brain is benummed, or when the birth is to be provoked.

The UTILITY is remarkable to empty the brain of gross vapours, and slime from the foreparts of it, and is profitable in lasting and sleepy affections, to expel the birth, having first taken medicines to that purpose; it powerfully draws from the tunicles of the brain, and is profitable in affections of them, proceeding from cholerick humors.

The altering Errhine.

I call that so which is used to cure divers affections of the nostrils, and this is also three-fold, liquid, soft, solid.

Tis Compounded, 1. Either of convenient Juices drawn out of Leaves with water, or some fit Liquor, to 6 or 7 ounces, in which afterwards is dissolved Honey, or some convenient syrup, to an ounce and a half, or two ounces, and sometimes a powder to half an ounce.

Or of some fit decoction to the quantity of a Clyster; in which also is dissolved honey, or some proper syrup to two or three ounces.

2. Or in the form of a *Liniment* of fit things as above.

3. Or in a solid form, viz. of a Turund as they cal it, of a powder chiefly of binders and dryers,

to

to three drams (*viz.* for one) and the white of an egg, some fit juice, or honey to make them up withal; make them up into a Turund or Pyramid-fashioned Tent (adding if you will the hairs of an Hare) and put it up in the nostrils.

The *USE* and *FORM* is as that of the purging *Errhine*; yet the use of this may be at any time; and particularly, when they go to bed, let them put in one; in the morning another.

The *UTILITY* is great, in particular affections of the Nose, as in the *Ozena*, *Polipus*, Ulcers, stench, bleeding, to which Turunds are used, in the form of a Liniment.

CHAP. IX.

Of Suffiments or Fumes.

SUffiments differ from Adoraments or sweet-scented perfumes, in this, because the last cast their scent without fire; but Suffiments do not part with theirs without the touch of fire:

And this is twofold, one for pleasure, another for health sake; and either of these may be dry or moyst; that is called a Fume or suffiment, this is rather to be called a vapor.

The Suffiment for pleasure.

This is chiefly dedicated to grace the Court, and for pleasures, consisting of sweet-scented things, and is either dry or moyst.

The

The *dry* is COMPOUNDED, 1. Either in the form of a Powder, the matter of which is either well-scented Gums, as *Storax* and *Benzoine* chiefly, and also roots, as *Acorns*, &c. Barks as of *Citrons*, *Orenges*; Woods, as *Lignum Aloes*; Leaves, as *Margerom*, &c. Cephalical flowers and spices, as *Mace*, *Cloves*, *Cinnamon*, &c. Also *Camphire*, *Musk*, *Amber-greece*, *Civet*, &c. Of these more or fewer.

As to the *quantity*, the Dose of the whole may be from one ounce to two ounces, according as the things are costly (but if it be for the perfuming the head-cloathes, it may be prescribed to four ounces, of the cheaper sorts) Therefore of this quantity, *viz.* one ounce, two ounces: let there be of *gums*, half an ounce, or four drams, of powders three drams, &c. or of each, alike parts; *Ambergreese*, Musk, Civet; as you think fit.

2. Or in the Form of Troschischs, the aforesaid powder being made up with gum-fragant dissolved in a fit water, make Troschischs, &c. of the weight of one dram: so let them be dryed.

3. Or in the form of Cypress Birds, as they call them, of sweet Gums, three ounces; the aforesaid powders, half an ounce, or six drams, Charcoal of Willow-wood two ounces, or three ounces with *Gum-tragant* dissolved, or *Labdanum* melted *q. s.* make Cypress birds, Caldles for Fumes, &c. Musk and Amber-greese may be added at your pleasure.

The USE and Form of the Powder, ℞, &c. Make a powder, to be cast on bright Charcoals to perfume Chambers or cloaths. *Of the Troschischs* this, ℞, &c. make &c. cast one, or two on the

the coals; so for the birdles, &c. light one of them for a fume for the chamber.

The *UTILITY*: though they seem only intended for pleasure, yet seeing they consist of precious cephalical and cordial simples, they cannot but cherish the brain, heart, and spirits of them, and drive away malignity.

The mayst is at this day usually prepared, and they cal it a Cassolete.

'Tis *COMPOUNDED* best of Gums, as *Storax*, *Benzoin*, to two ounces, and if you wil of some of the powders to two or three drams; these are all dissolved in some sweet water, as of Roses, and then Cassolets made for a long use like paste, and dryed; at the time of using them a Cassolet is sprinkled with some sweet water, and then heated over the fire it breaths forth a very fragrant perfume: and to make it the more delightful, you may add *gr.* 3 or 4 of Musk.

The *Utility* is the same with that of the dry one.

Suffument for Health.

That Fume that is addicted to the conservation of health is from its effect two-fold; one strengthening the principal parts, and refreshing the spirits, almost of the same things as that for pleasure; The other altering, as drying the brain, cleansing the Lungs, moving the courses, helping suffocation, &c.

From the former it, also two-fold; dry and moist.

The *DRY* in general is made of things which breathe forth a Fume, and that well-scented, as *Ladanum*, *Storax*, *Benzoin*, &c. as aforesaid, and

and sometimes ill-scented, as *Galbanum*, *æssa Fœtida*, *Castoreum*, &c. the use of which is from beneath; in affections of the Womb 'tis also made of the powders of things serving to the scope, as of Roots, Woods, *&c.* therefore in general 'tis made of gums and powders,

But in *special* 'tis compounded first in the form of a powder of the aforesaid things, from one to two ounces, according as the use is, to continue long or short; and particularly let there be of gums, 2 ounces, of powders half an ounce *&c.* sometimes more, sometimes less, as you think fit.

Note, that in the affections of the Womb are usually taken among the powders *Gallia*, and *Alipta Moscata*, and sometimes the powders of strengthening electuaries to one dram.

And sometimes a Fumigation or Suffiment is made only of *Tobacco* cast on coals, or else of the smoke taken by a pipe or tunnel; it purgeth the head and brain wonderfully from cholerick and phlegmatick excrements.

2. Else in the form of *Troschiscbs*, see before.

The *USE* and *FORM* of the *Powder*, R. &c. Make a powder, of which cast &c. on bright coals, (and if it be for the head) receive the smoke at the mouth; or else smoke the headclothes with it if it be for the diseases of other parts springing from thence, as the Phthisis, *&c.* if it be for the breast receive it with open mouth; if it be for the Womb, and other cavities, receive the smoke by a tunnel, as also thorow a hollow stool; if it be for paines of the joynts, fume wel cotton, &c. and apply it. But of the Troschischs R. &c. Make Troschischs; see before,

The

The *PTILITT* is, as is said, either to strengthen, or alter diversly, usually to dry the brain, and consume Catarrhs, & strengthen, for Phlegm contained in the breast, in divers affections, to dry the ulcers of the lungs, of *Tobacco*, *Coltsfoot*, *Brimstone*, &c. to provoke, or stop the courses, of fit things, as also to stay the Fluxes of the belly, as the dysentery, against fits of the mother, of ill-scented things to the superior, and sweet scented things to the inferior parts; to dry and strengthen the womb, and help conception: for Ulcers of the ears, nose, mouth, lungs, womb, &c. for the French Pox of *Cinnaber*, as is usual (whose fume received in a close place, cures that filthy disease by a spetting Flux) and all affections depending thereon, as Ulcers, pains. And tis usually made in the form of a powder or Troschisch; as ℞ *Cinnaber*, one ounce and a half, *Gum*, half an ounce, four dram of a strengthening powder, two drams, three drams, make a powder, or else with turpentine make Troschisches.

The *MOYST* Suffiment *is otherwise properly called a vapor, and is made of a liquor fit for the purpose, sending forth a vapor by the help of boyling it.*

Tis COMPOSED, 1. Either of a simple liquor, as vinegar, wine, *Aqua vitæ*, or Rose water, &c. Note that sometimes red hot flints, are quenched in the vinegar, for the discussing of hard Oedematous swellings; as also red hot tyles to be quenched in vinegar, and the vapor received, as is usual in the time of the pestilence.

2. Or of the decoction of fit simples to be prescribed in the quantity of the fomentation, or according to the ampleness of the part. Therefore in affections of the ears, a third part of that will suffice.

The

The *USE* and *FORME*, &c. make a decoction, whose vapor let them receive in affections of the womb, and others also thorow a hollow stool, and a leaden Pipe, or Tunnel; see the Infession: in affections of the ears, by a Pipe or Tunnel, which they vulgarly call an *EMBOTE*.

The UTILITY is great, especially in affections of the Womb, in staying or provoking the courses, of molliniers and attenuators; in the dysentery of binders, in divers affections of the Anus, or Fundament, in stopping and easing the Hemorrhoids; they are also prescribed for affections of the ears and eyes. In general they may be used to dry, binde, relax, mollifie, discuss, open, &c.

CHAP. X.

Of Odoraments, or Perfumes.

THey are prescribed partly for delight, partly for health, but chiefly to alter the brain, refresh the animal spirits, to put away ill scents, and infectious ayre, for the increasing the vigour and spirits of the heart also, the scent of them being attracted with the breath into the Lungs, and thence to the heart.

They are made of sweet smelling things, and are either dry or moist.

Dry Perfumes.

These are *Compounded*, 1 In the forme of a *powder:* see the suffiments: but the quantity of this is to be limited according to the manner of using it; if it be for the greater baggs, 'tis best

beſt to uſe the Violet or Cipreos powder: but for the leſſer ſort two or three ounces wil ſerve, yet ſo that the quantity of the gums be diminiſhed; ſee above: which in a box bored ful of holes, or otherwiſe you may hold to the noſe in a little knot, or bagg of ſilk.

2. Or in the form of a Pomander, of the powder aforeſaid in *Suffiment* for pleaſure, to one ounce, an ounce and a half, or two ounces, adding *Musk*: *Ambergreeſe*, *Civet*, to *grains* 6. half a ſcruple, or a ſcruple, as you pleaſe; And 'tis made up either with *Gum tragant* diſſolved in *Roſe water*, ſo make two Pomanders to be carried in the hands, or which is better, let them be incorporated with *Ladanum* diſſolved: ſo make a Pomander, which anoint with ſome ſweet oyl. Note alſo, that tis better for your *Musk*, *Ambergreeſe*, *Civet*, not to go into the Compoſition, but to wipe the outſide of it over with them diſſolved, as alſo with oyl of *Cinnamom*, *Cloves*, &c. alone or mixt, and to renew them often.

3. Or in the form of Globulets or beads, made of the ſame maſſe as the powders are; but the proportion of it muſt be according to the quantity you intend to make; to which the Apothecaries to increaſe the quantity of them add willow charcole finely powdered.

4. Or in the form of a perfumed ſope, for the waſhing of the hands and head, of *Venice* ſope, or other white ſope to 4 ounces; ſweet powder ſix drams, and if you wil, *Musk* or *Ambergreece gr.* 3, 4 &c. with a ſufficient quantity of Roſe water incorporate, and make bals great or little.

The *USE*: let the ſent of them be often ſnuffed up, but the ſcope is onely to cleanſe the hands and head from filthineſs, &c. The

The *UTILITY* is expreſſed at firſt.

Moiſt Perfumes.

They are *Compounded*, 1. in the form of ſweet water; and this is either ſimple, as *Orange-flower water* to 3 ounces, of which you may add of *Muſk*, or *Ambergreeſe* gr. 2 or 3, The Compound is made of Odoriferous things liquid, as Roſe-water, Orange-flower water, &c. 4 ounces, Cinnamon water one ounce, and dry things, as of ſweet powders to 2, 3, or 4 drams, and if you wil, ſome few grains *of Muſk* and *Ambergreeſe*.

2. Or in the Form of a *Liniment*, which now adayes they cal ſweet balſam, of white wax often waſhed and melted, one ounce, of ſome convenient chymical oyls one dram, and if you wil, *Muſk*, *Civet*, *Ambergreeſe*, ſome few grains, or more courſly, of half an ounce of ſweet powder, wax 3 drams, oyl of Ben, or of ſweet Almonds, *q. ſ.* ſo make a Liniment, adding *Muſk*, *Ambergreeſe*, &c. to ſome few grains.

The *USE* of the *water* is to waſh the hands, beard, and hair of the head chiefly: The uſe of the Balſam and its utility is the ſame as that of the dry perfume; the hand alſo may be lightly ſmeared, and the inſide of the noſtrils to avoid ſtenches; to comfort the brain and heart, and the ſpirits of both.

CHAP. XL

Of *the Scute.*

IT is in general a topical Medicine for the ſtomach, made in the form of a Scutcheon, which ſeeing it is uſually made both of plaiſters, and baggs, cuſtome hath ſo far prevailed, the ſtrengthening bagg is often uſed for the Scute.

'Tis *COMPOUNDED* therefore 1. in the form of a bagg, of the powders of heating ſtomachical ſtomachical things, obſerving theſe rules in every thing that are ſet down for your Quilt Caps, from whoſe Form it onely differs in the uſe, ſo that if the proportion of the powder be alſo two ounces.

2. Or in the form of a Plaiſter, of the maſs of ſome ſtomachical plaiſter, as *Empl. de Maſticbe*, 2 ounces, and of ſome ſtomachical powder, to half an ounce; to which alſo are ſometimes added wel-ſented gums to 2 drams, and are all made up with *Turpentine, q. ſ.*

The *USE* and *FORM* of the bagg, ℞. &c. make a groſs powder, which is to be taken in perfumed cotton, or in the wool of a ſcarlet die, and with a ſilken fold, make a bagg ſcutcheon faſhioned to be quilted all over, which being hung about the neck, let it be alwaies kept to the region of the ſtomack; let it be ſprinkled ſometimes if you think fit with a little *Aqua vitæ.*

Of

Of the *Plaiſter*, R. &c. make a ſcutcheon-faſhioned plaiſter, ſpread on Leather; let it be applyed to the ſtomack a little ſmeated with ſome fit oyl, or ſprinkle it with powder. leſt it ſtick too faſt.

The UTILITY is great to ſtrengthen the ſtomack after purging: to correct a cold diſtemper, help concoction, ſtrengthen it, and ſtay vomiting.

CHAP. XII.

Of a Peſſary, and Naſcall.

IT is a Medicine to be put into the ſecret parts for helping divers affections of the VVomb, and from its various form was diverſly called of old.

Tis now called a Peſſary, and is in ſhape the length of the fore-finger, the thickneſs of a thumb, and is otherwiſe called a Peſſe, and thoſe which are made like knots or nodes, are called Naſcals.

They are from their effects two-fold, purging and altering.

The purging Peſſe

Is COMPOUNDED, 1 either of a purging Opiate alone, to an ounce and a half, or two ounces, *viz.* for 2 (for two are alwayes to be preſcribed, that when one is taken forth, another may be put in) let it be incorporated with ſome juyce, as of *Mercury*, *&c.*

Note, that ſometimes powders may be added to the Opiate, either ſharp, hyſterical opening powders to a dram and a half, or two drams, or elſe the powder of purgers, ſimple or compound, to two drams; let them be incorporated with juyce; alſo inſtead of them gums, as *Ammoniack, Mirrh, &c.* are often added to two drams.

2. Or of the powder of Catharticks, and of compound Electuaries, as Hiera picra, to 6 drams, or one ounce, together with a dram and a half, or two drams of hyſterical altering things; ſo with honey, or a juyce, or both *q. ſ.* let them be incorporated.

3. Or of juyces and honey boyled to the conſiſtence of an Opiate, adding purging powders to this proportion. of Juyces two or three ounces, honey an ounce and a half, powder half an ounce:

The *USE* and *FORM*, R. &c. with red Saunders, or a ſilken fold, make a peſſe, or elſe mix it with a little cotton, and wrap it in a ſilken fold, and make a peſſe of the fit bigneſs, which is to be put in, which being tied to the thigh with a thread that it may be drawn forth again at pleaſure, which is uſually done after 4 or 6 hours, the dregs may be cleanſed from it, afterwards that or another is put in again, therefore they uſe to have two at evening when you go to ſleep.

Note, that before it be put in, that or the interior parts of the Wombs entrance is to be anointed with ſome fit oyl, the uſe is to continue three or 4 dayes.

The *UTILITY* is after purgations, and chiefly in cold diſtempers: in which are heaped phlegma-

phlegmatick excrements & dreggs; from whence often proceeds barrenneſs *&c.* alſo ſometimes when a diet is preſcribed, then they are to be continued as long as that is appointed. And 'tis the beſt courſe to compound them of purgers and ſtrengtheners, of each equal parts. They are alſo uſeful to provoke the Termes, for they draw much, eſpecially if you add *Musk* or *Civet* to them; 'tis moſt profitable and uſual to make it of purgers and ſtrengtheners as aforeſaid, to help conception, one of which let be worn in ſome time before the Woman accompanieth with her Huſband, and afterward let her put in another of only ſtrengtheners and binders.

Of the altering and ſtrengthening Peſſary.

Peſſaries which do not purge are preſcribed two wayes, either to ſtrengthen the Womb, or to alter diverſly.

'Tis *COMPOUNDED*, 1. in the *form* of an Opiate, a powder made of fit hyſterical roots, leaves, ſpices, *&c.* which are to be incorporated with fit things.

The quantity of powders is ſix drams, or one ounce, ſometimes an ounce and a half, and that which makes them up, either honey or ſome juyce, *q. ſ.* and then uſually cotten is daubed with that mixture, and rowled round for a peſſary; but when 'tis made with honey becauſe 'tis of a thicker conſiſtence, there is no need of Cotton, and the peſſe is made with ſilken covering, *&c.* it may alſo be made up with a fit ſyrup.

Note alſo, that it may be profitably made with juyces boyled up with honey to the *form* of an Opiate.

Note alſo, that ſometimes an officinal Opiate may be preſcribed, as *Triphera Perſica ſine opio* to half an ounce, and powders to two drams, or half an ounce, after the manner of Opiates.

2. Or in the form of a Liniment of ſix drams, or an ounce of powder with Oyl of Spikenard, and wax. *q.ſ.* make it a *Liniment* with which a cotton is daubed, or carded wool, and is formed like a Peſſe, to be covered over with a thin ſilken fold.

3. Or in the form of a *Suppoſitory*, of honey an ounce and a half, or two ounces, boyled with a convenient juyce to 2 or 3 ounces, adding if you wil half a dram of powder.

4. Or of onely oyntments fit for the purpoſe, mixed with a cotton, or otherwiſe; where you would binde, of *Unguentum Comitiſſæ*, and a fit powder, ana, an ounce.

5. Or of a handful of green herbs bruiſed and incorporated with a juyce or honey, adding if you wil half an ounce, or ſix drams of powder.

6. Or of Cotton only, eſpecially in the fits of the Mother, rubbed with half a dram of Civet, or Musk diſſolved, and with other Odoriferous things ſuddenly put up.

Alſo a cotton may profitably be uſed for a Peſſary to other ſcopes, imbued with fit juyces to 2 or 3 ounces, which is effectual where we would bind, to which may uſually be added powders to half an ounce, 6 drams as above, or other convenient things, as buſter, greaſe, fat to mollifie, *&c.*

The USE and FORM: ſee the purging Peſs; the ſolid peſſary ſhould alwayes be wrapped in a thin ſilken fold, that it may the eaſier be drawn forth, for elſe 'twil diſſolve; alſo when you

you would bind and dry, it ought to be renewed often.

The *VTILITY* is to ſtrengthen the womb, as is ſaid, alſo to alter diverſly, as for its inflammations, to mollifie its hardneſs, and for divers diſtempers; for all fluxes from the VVomb, the falling of it forth, fits of the Mother, to expel the Birth, and after-birth, to provoke the Courſes; but thoſe are for the moſt part alſo purgers, which muſt not be uſed unleſs after univerſal purgations; alſo for Ulcers of the paſſage or neck of the Womb, and for ſuffiments for the VVomb.

* *This of a* PESSARY: *Here follows a* NASCAL.

Some will have them the ſame thing that a Peſſary is; others will have it ſignifie a node or pencil, 'tis invented for Virgins ſake, who for ſhame or modeſty refuſe a Peſſary; *or for Women who cannot admit them, as when they have Ulcers.*

Whatſoever is the reaſon, they are *COMPOUNDED* in the manner of a Node, or Pencil, and are very ſoft, of fine locks of cotton or wool moiſtened, either with ſome fit juyce, or oyntment, or other things aforeſaid, the quantity of which is ſcarce limited; generally a flock of VVool is preſcribed to be imbued with *q. ſ.* of ſuch a thing.

Such are made for fits of the Mother, a flock of cotton being ſleightly rubbed with *Civet*, or *Musk* diſſolved in nard oyl, as above.

The *USE* is as of Peſſaries.

The *VTILITY* in Virgins is the ſame as of the other in *VVomen*; they are made for Ulcers in the neck of the womb, and paines of it.

CHAP. XIII.

Of a Suppository.

TIs a topical Medicine used to the fundament, or anus, three or four inches in length, slender and round like a smal candle; of old in the form of an acorn, from whence they were called of the Greeks Balanoi; *at this day tis commonly called a Suppository, chiefly to move the belly to stool, and for some other affections.*

And 'tis either simple, or compound.

The Simple.

This is made either of the stalk or root of Beets, *Colewort* or *Marshmallows*, the outward rind peeled of, to which is added sometimes *salt* (to augment the provocative virtue) rubbed on the outside, so smoothed over with oyl they are put up; also of the stalk of a *Leek* anointed with butter, or *white Sope* sharpned like a suppository; also honey alone boyled to a hard consistence, for so it becomes more sharp.

The Compound.

This is made of Honey as the *basis*, boyled til it wil not stick to the fingers, then adding powders to it neer this proportion, as to one ounce you may add one dram, or 4 scruples of powder at the most, according as the powder is lighter in weight, or stronger in operation; which quantity wil serve for two or three suppositories.

But

But the Honey is boyled by it ſelf, or with fit juyces to irritate, or for other purpoſes, of which let there be an ounce, or an ounce and a half.

The USE and FORM, R. &c. Make ſuppoſitories, one of which let be put up, firſt being anointed with oyl, or butter when need requires; ſo that if they be purgative, once or twice a day wil ſuffice; if onely to alter, they may be uſed oftener; if they conſiſt of Narcoticks for paines, let them not ſtay too long leſt they induce a Palſie, (and therefore thy uſe to be faſtened to a thread, that they may be drawn forth at pleaſure,) neither ought they often to be uſed.

The UTILITY in general is two-fold, either to provoke the expulſive Faculty to ſtool, or elſe for the proper affections of the Anus, and ſtreight gut.

The Belly is to be moved with a ſuppoſitory, either when the age of the Patient wil not receive a clyſter, as in ſucking children, or in humorous people, whoſe cuſtom and waywardneſs wil not admit of one, as uſually in Virgins; alſo when clyſters put up work not, as in the cholick is ſeen; or when purging Medicines taken down do not move as they ſhould, or when the dung ſtaies in the belly only for want of irritating; or when it is ſo hardened in the ſtreight gut that you cannot put up a clyſter. And laſtly, when the expulſive Faculty is unmindful of his office, and ſluggiſh.

Alſo to revel or withdraw when humours tend wholly up to the head and midrife; or otherwiſe, when for revulſion-ſake they are to be drawn down, or purged forth, as generally in

in cold and sleepy affections of the head, in which the expulsive faculty benummed, is by this means excited, or also when Clysters offend the sick, &c.

And bsides this scope of purging, they are made for the proper affections of *anus*, and streight gut, of honey as the basis, and other matter serving to the intention, after the manner aforesaid: so to open the hemorrhoids, with sharp things, to stop them with other fit things: also for Tenesmus, Ascarides, Ulcers, the Relaxation and Palsie of the Sphincter, and pains, with appropriated powders, mixed with honey in the aforesaid proportion.

And mark that *concerning* the matter of laxative Suppositories, some are gentler, as the simples afore recited, for infants; others stronger, which consist of Salt, Mouse-dung, purging powders; simple as Aloes, Agarick, Senna; or compound, as usually *Hiera Picra*, and also other strong things, the use of which is chiefly in the sleepy affections, as *Sal Gem*, *Sal Ammoniack*, *Salt Peeter*; and Purgers, simple as Coloquintis, or compound as *Hiera diacoloquintida*, to half a scruple, or one scruple: also if for pains, *opium* be admitted, tis to be done warily, for fear of a Palsie, and you should scarce ascend to half a scruple.

CHAP.

CHAP. XIV.

Of a Cliſter.

IT ſignifies a waſhing from the Greek word Elyzo, *and in Greek is called* Clyſter, *and from its being injected,* Enema, *from Eniemi to inject; in general it ſignifies any Lotion or Injection into any part, but particularly, that which is injected by the fundament.*

And this may be accounted threefold, purging, altering, and ſtrengthening.

A Purging Cliſter.

Is COMPOVNDED, of a fit liquor, in which together with honey, ſugar, and oyl are diſſolved divers purgers; and therefore ſo many things are to be conſidered in the compoſition, but chiefly two; the *liquor* of which tis made, and the things to be diſſolved in it.

The *Liquor* as to its *quality* is either the common decoction for Cliſters uſual in the ſhops, or a *Magiſterial* decoction preſcribed, according to the urgent occaſion and intention of the Phyſitian, of convenient things: and is either *Altering* or *Purging*.

The Altering which is moſt uſual, is compoſed of fit mollifying things, heating or cooling, according to the intention, of roots, leaves, ſeeds, fruits, flowers, neer this proportion, as of roots, two or three ounces, leaves four handfuls, ſeeds ſix drams, or one oune, or an ounce and a half at moſt, fruits pa. eight, flowers pugil. three.

If

If you would make it purgative, you may do it by adding for phlegme, of *Carthamus* ſeed bruiſed 6 drams, or one ounce, Agarick tied up like a node in a ragg, 3 drams, *Elect-Turbith* 2 drams, for Melancholy 1 ounce, or 6 drams of *Senna*, Polipody an ounce, which (is very rare, all which are to be added after the roots, and are preſcribed to be boyled after the ſeeds alſo; all theſe are boyled in a convenient liquor, or in water only. (But this is rare to boyl in purgers, becauſe purgers are afterwards diſſolved in it, which wil be ſufficient.)

As to the *quantity* of the *Liquor*, it varies according to the age of the party very much; for 3 ounces wil ſerve for a child of 4 or 5 moneths old; if one bigger, 5 or 6 drams; for people of ripe age uſually *lib.* 1. for great men *lib.* one and a half.

But here we muſt obſerve in them which are with child, or Hydropical, troubled with wind, and in old Folks we ſhould rather take leſſe, ſo that the whole Clyſter exceed not 12 ounces; alſo when we would have it kept long in the body.

The things to be DISSOLVED, in relation to their quality, are either alterers or purgers; the Alterers which are generally diſſolved, are *Honey* and *Sugar*, and alwayes *oyl*, yet it may be left out when the expulſive faculty is to be ſharply provoked, or where we would draw powerfully. To theſe are ſometimes added *Salt*, uſually *ſal gem.* where it ſhould be more provokative, as in ſleepy affections.

But the purgers are officinal electuaries, either onely lenifying or purging, according to the variety

riety of the humor to be purged, and the diverſe conſtitution of the body.

Sometimes inſtead of them are diſſolved pills in the drowſie affections.

As to the *quantity*, *Honey* and *Sugar* are diſſolved to two or 3 ounces at moſt; in them of ripe age, in children a fourth part wil ſuffice, and leſs in infants. Oyl, in thoſe ripe of age 3 ounces, ſalt to half a dram, or a dram. Electuaries to double the doſe in which they are given by the mouth; but uſually they are proportion'd to an ounce and a half, unleſs they are very gentle, or you would have it work very ſtrongly, then you may add 2 ounces; in Infants you may preſcribe a quarter of that proportion; but if you preſcribe pils (which is ſeldom) do [illegible] to two or three drams.

The *USE* and *FORM*, R. &c. Make a Decoction, take of the ſtrained liquor, *&c.* in which diſſolve, &c. make a Clyſter to be injected long after meat when the ſtomack is empty; yet it may be preſcribed at any hour when need requires, as in the ſleepy affections.

The *UTILITY*. 1. To purge forth the excrements of the belly, and draw forth divers excrementitious humours, from whence ſoever then are accumulated. 2. To evacuate the adjacent parts, as Reins, Bladder, Meſentery, and Stomack from them; alſo to empty the more remote parts as the head and breaſt, &c. for the nether parts, being cleared and emptied by a certain conſecution of the humours, the uppermoſt are alſo diſburthened: and for this cauſe they are eſteemed as revulſive Medicines.

The

The altering Clyſter.

☞ This is alſo *COMPOUNDED* of a fit *Liquor*, and proper things to be *diſſolved* in it.

The *LIQUOR*, as to its quality is various, according to the ſcope, and is either *ſimple* or *Compound*.

The ſimple is ſometimes *Milk*, or the *broth* of a *ſheeps-head, and appurtenance*, for a fit Liquor, as in the dyſentery, Cholick, *&c.*

Sometimes of Oyl onely, as in windineſſe, and the cholick, and of ſtrong *Wine*, or *Hippocras* in the ſame affections.

Sometimes of *Calibiated Milk* for an aſtringent, and ſometimes otherwiſe of the decoction of the decoction of *Barly*, or with it of bran, Roſes for a cleanſer, which is uſually done: thoſe 3 being preſcribed, ana, p. 1.

The *Compound Liquor* which is generally in uſe for theſe ſorts of clyſters, is the decoction of divers parts of plants as aforeſaid, more or fewer, which reſpect both the part affected, and the affection, in the ſame proportion as is ſaid in the purging clyſter.

As to the *quantity* of the *liquor*, ſee there alſo.

Things to be *diſſolved* in the altering Clyſter, in relation to their quality, are very various according to the variety of indications; though they be ſeldom altering without purging, unleſs the indications do wholly diſſwade, as in the pain-eaſing, and nouriſhing Clyſter, *&c.*

Uſually there are diſſolved *Honey*, *Sugar*, *Oyl*, in the doſe aforeſaid: ſometimes there muſt not

be

be *oyl*, but only *ſugar* and *honey*, as in the cleanſing Clyſter; and on the contrary in the Emollient Clyſter *oyl* is to be preferred: as alſo *Butter*, if you will, and ſuch like fat things.

Beſides theſe, or ſometimes without them according to the urgency of the indications, *juices* are diſſolved, as in the aſtringent Clyſter, made of leaves (which are alſo profitable in purgative Clyſters, of drawing medicines) alſo aſtringent powders, as is generally uſed in the fluxes of the belly, and dyſentery: ſometimes *Goats ſuet* in the dyſentery and pains, to daub as it were the inſide of the entrails, leaſt the ſharp humors in their paſſage ſhould more ulcerate.

Note alſo that the *yolk of an egg* is to be diſſolved, elſe it will ſoon harden; ſometimes *urine* as in the dropſie *Aſcites*, ſo alſo *Philonium* in a Narcotick Clyſter.

But for a nouriſhing Clyſter, fit Conſerves are convenient, *white Sugar*, *Conſumption broths*, alſo confection *Alchermes*, when you would ſtrengthen powerfully; and *Treacle* alſo, of which muſt be well noted, that in the overworking of Phyſick, and in the Epidemical dyſentery, it works miraculouſly and ſuddenly.

As to the quantity, tis alſo diverſe according to the diverſity of the things that are to be diſſolved.

Honey and Sugar to 2. or 3 ounces.

Butter and other fat things to 3. ounces.

Iuices to 2. or 3. ounces.

Powders to ſix dram, or one ounce, more or leſs, according to their efficacy.

Suet to half an oun. or 1. oun. in whoſe place alſo you may uſe an ordinary candle, by the anointing of which, we ſee execriations preſently healed.

Urine

Urine to 2 or 3 ounces.

Philonium to two drams from one.

Conſerves, from half an ounce to an ounce.

White Sugar, two or three ounces, as alſo nouriſhing compoſitions.

Confections, from 1 dram to 2 for the richer ſort.

New Treacle, from half a dram to a dram, or ſomewhat more.

Yolks of Eggs, in number 1. 2 in a Clyſter, to eaſe pain, gently cleanſing and nouriſhing:

The *USE* and *FORM* ſee before, but it may be injected at any convenient hour when need requires.

Note, That nouriſhing Clyſters ought to be preſcribed in a greater quantity, and often to be repeated, and to be kept longer than ordinary, in others obſerve the contrary.

The UTILITY appears diverſe in the affections of the guts eſpecially in the greater; next in the affections of the neighbouring parts; they are made alſo to alter the inteſtines diverſly, and the whole body, as to cool in divers affections, and temper the heat of the adjacent parts, to mollifie the excrements, lenifie the acrimony of humors, to eaſe the paines of the guts, Reins, Bladder, Womb: to diſcuſs windineſs, and cleanſe both excrementitious humors, and the Ulcers of them which have the dyſentery, and to heal them: to bind and ſtay fluxes of the belly, draw forth, and kil Wormes, and to nouriſh: ſo that there is almoſt no affection, or part of the body which may not receive benefit by a Clyſter, eſpecially by that which purgeth the belly, and therefore they are profitably preſcribed to precede every purgation, that the ſucceeding purge might work the

eaſier

easier and quicker, without either griping or vomiting; when otherwise many impurities may be left behind, which either may return to divers parts, or at least offend them with the putrid vapors that proceed from them, contaminating the good juyces and spirits, and clowding and oppressing the natural heat.

CHAP: XV.

Of divers Injections.

BEsides those Injections that are made into the fundament, others also are prescribed for divers parts of the body; as into the Ears, Womb, Bladder, Yard, Ulcerous cavities, especially Fistuloes, and are by a general name also called Clisters.

Of that into the Ears.

They are COMPOUNDED 1. Either of oyls only, or juyces, waters decoction fit for the purpose, according to the variety of the affections.

2. Or of 2 or 3, or more of the aforesaid mixed together, in which sometimes things serving to a diverse scope are dissolved; but in a small quantity, and these which are almost liquid themselves.

As to the *quantity* of liquid things,

Of Oyls, half an ounce, an ounce, or six drams will suffice, according to its efficacy and the continuance of its use.

Juices, Waters, Decoctions, one or two ounces, either ſeveral, or mixed, according alſo to their efficacy, and the uſe, wil be enough.

As to the quantity of things to be diſſolved, it muſt be ſmal becauſe of the exquiſite ſenſe, and ſmalneſſe of the part; if they be powders; half a ſcruple, or a ſcruple; if fat things, two drams; Honey, half an ounce, &c. wil be ſufficient at moſt.

The USE and FORM, Rx, &c. drop into the ear two or three drops, according to the faculty of the Medicine, and ſometimes the ear is to be filled with the Liquor: but a little after holding down the head, it is to be cleanſed, as chiefly when we uſe the Decoction; If it be Oyl only, ſome few drops are poured in, after the ear is ſtopped with perfumed cotton, eſpecially if it be a cold affection.

The UTILITY: 'tis chiefly uſed for inflammations, Ulcers, noyſes, deafneſſe, Worms, and other particular affections of the Ears; See the Magazeen Phyſical.

Of that into the Womb.

They are otherwiſe called hyſterical Clyſters; and the pipe by which they are injected into the Womb, is by the Greeks called a *Metrenchite*, and the medicines from that Metrenchiticks.

They are COMPOUNDED 1. *In* relation to their quality, as of the decoction of roots, leaves *&c.* in the quantity, as for a Clyſter, of wch liquor ſtrained, take 3 or 4 onnces, make an Injection; yet they reſerve one pint for many Injections.

Note,

Note, that thus is made the Injection simply; but sometimes, and that usually, other things are added diversly; according to the scope, as is said in an altering Clyster, and that to half, or a third part of the quantity of that.

2. Or of the juice of Herbs clarified.

3. Or of distilled waters.

4. Or of some other simple Liquor; See the Clyster.

5. Or of those mixt together, so that 3 or 4 ounces may suffice for an injection, in which if any things serve to the same intention you may dissolve them in the aforesaid proportion.

The USE and FORM, &c. Make an injection into the Womb by a Metrenchite, or Womb Clysterpipe.

The VTILITY may be for divers affections of the Womb, as inflammations, ulcers, paines, windines, to heat, cool, to provoke the courses, or stay them, bring down the after-birth, for the falling out of the Womb, and to cleanse it from divers impurities; see for matter among the hysterical things in the following physical Magazeen, or other tables.

Of those for the Yard and Bladder.

These are *Compounded* of a convenient liquor, as hath been often said, simple or compound; See the altering Clyster; they are also made of Emulsions, as in the running of the Reins, sharpnesse of the Urine, &c.

As to the *quantity*, three ounces or four ounces will suffice.

Note, that in this ſometimes *nothing*, ſometimes *honey* chiefly, or ſome fit ſyrup is to be diſſolved to an ounce, and ſometimes the powders of divers things, but ground to an exact Alchool to a dram, a dram and a half, or two drams.

The *USE*; ℞. &c. Make an injection by a ſyringe; ſometimes when the way to the bladder is ſtopped, 'tis preſcribed to be done by a Catheter.

The *UTILITY*. 'tis chiefly to cleanſe, both ſlime ſticking to the orifice of the bladder, and alſo filth from Ulcers, for paines, exulcerations, excreſcences of the fleſh, *&c.* for heat and inflammation, as uſually in the virulent Gonorrhea, and dry Ulces, *&c*

Of thoſe for Ulcerous Cavities, and Fiſtula's.

They are *COMPOUNDED* of a fit Liquor, proportioned to the largeneſſe of the Fiſtula, in which are diſſolved fit things, and that ſomewhat plentifully, where we muſt imitate other particular Injections, *viz.* to the quantity of the Liquor. and things to be diſſolved.

The *USE*: make an injection by a Syring.

The *UTILITY*: for the leſſening of the callous, or hardneſs of Fiſtulaes, but chiefly for cleanſing them, to breed fleſh, and cicatrize matter, for which yon may ſee in his proper place.

God be praiſed.

FINIS.

An Appendix of the doſes of Purgers given in ſubſtance, of which there is frequent uſe in the treatiſe of the Compoſition of Medicines.

Cholagogues, or Medicines purging Choler.

The gentler ſort.

Caſſia, from half an ounce, to an ounce and a half, and two ounces.

Manna, 1 ounce, 2 ounces, 3 ounces.

Tamarinds, 1 ounce, 2 ounces, 3 ounces.

Juice of Roſes, one ounce, one ounce and a half, two ounces.

Moderate Purgers.

Aloes, one dram, two drams, two drams and a half.

Rheubarb, one dram, one dram and a half, two drams.

Citrine Myrobolanes, two drams, three drams, half an ounce, five drams.

The vehement ſort.

Scammony, *gr.* ſix, fifteen, one ſcruple.

Paulus & Etius, to one dram, *Meſues*, *gr.* 12.

Melanagogues, or Medicines purging Melancholy.

The gentler ſort.

Senna, 2 ſcruples, 1 dram, 2 drams, ſome to three drams.

Polipody of Oak, 2, 3 drams, half an ounce.

Epithimum, 2, 3 drams, half an ounce.

The more violent ſort.

Black Hellebore, *gr.* 15. half a dram, two ſcruples. *Meſ.* one dram.

Lapis Armenius lotus, half a dram, a dram, a dram and a half; unwaſht a dram only.

Lap. Lazuli lotus, half a dram, a dram and half.

Meſues, from two drams, to two drams and a half.

Phlegmagogues, or purgers of Phlegme.

Gentle.

Carthamus ſeed, a dram, half an ounce, ſix drams.

Moderate. *Agarick*, 2 ſcruples, 1, 2 drams.

Violent.

Turbith, 2 ſcruples, 1 dram, 4 ſcruples. *Meſues* 3 handfuls, from one dram to two.

Hermodactils, 2 ſcruples, a dram, a dram and half. *Meſ.* a dram and half to three drams.

Mechoacan, 2 ſcruples, a dram, a dram and half, or two drams at moſt.

Jalap, 2 ſcruples, 1 dram, 4 ſcruples at moſt.

Coloquintis, *gr.* 6. 15. one ſcruple. *Dioſcorides* to two ſcruples.

Opopanax, to half a dram, and a dram.

Sagapene, half a dram, and a dram.

Euphorbium, *gr.* 3, 8, 12.

Hydragogues,

Hydragogues, or purgers of Watrish humours.

Gentle, as of dwarf Elder, or Danewort,

The { Seed, one dram.
Bark two drams.
Juice, half an ounce, six drams.

So Elder in the same manner.

Vehement.

Soldanella, a dram, a dram and a half, two drams.
Juyce of Ireos, half an ounce, 6 drams, 1 ounce.
Elaterium, *gr.* 6. half a scruple, *gr.* 15.
Esula prepared, the same.
Mechecan and *Jalap*, { Of these see in the Phlegmagogues.

FINIS.